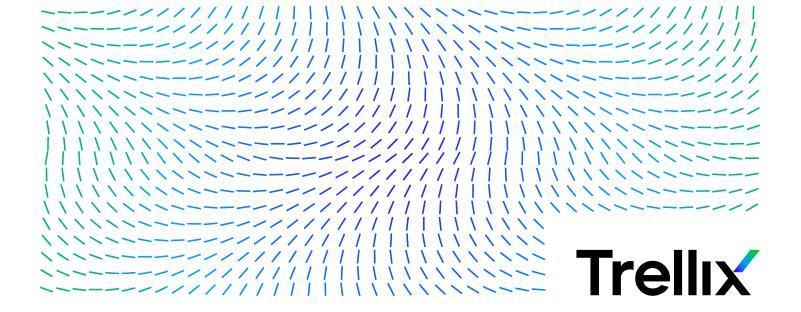
McAfee Network Security Platform 9.2.x Integration Guide



Contents

Integration with McAfee ePO	. 6
Endpoint details query from the McAfee ePO server	. 7
Additional details for managed endpoints	. 8
Start McAfee ePO console	. 9
Additional details for unmanaged endpoints	10
Install Network Security Platform extension file in McAfee ePO	11
Tags	. 14
Network Security Platform dashboard in McAfee ePO	19
Configurations	20
Integration with McAfee Global Threat Intelligence	35
How Network Security Platform - GTI integration works.	35
Network Security Platform integration with Private Global Threat Intelligence (GTI) Cloud	37
Configure Telemetry	. 40
Network Security Platform-GTI integration for IP Reputation.	47
How Network Security Platform-GTI integration for IP Reputation works.	47
Enhanced SmartBlocking	48
Configure Endpoint Reputation for an admin domain	49
Configure Endpoint Reputation for an interface	53
Configure Endpoint Reputation from sub-interface level	55
Viewing the Global Threat Intelligence alert category details.	56
Next generation reports	56
How to view Telemetry report	56
Network Security Platform-GTI integration for connection limiting policies.	57
Network Security Platform-GTI integration for File Reputation.	
Terminologies.	59
Benefits of File Reputation.	
۰ Network Security Platform-File Reputation integration in detail	
File Reputation integration configurations in the Manager.	
View File Reputation details in Attack Log.	78
Limitations.	
Troubleshooting.	
Integration with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense.	
Advantages	81

Terminologies
How Network Security Platform - integration works. 86
Details of how the integration works. 87
Considerations
High-level steps for integrating with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. 89
Integrating Network Security Platform and McAfee Advanced Threat Defense
Enable McAfee Advanced Threat Defense integration for an admin domain
Enable McAfee Advanced Threat Defense integration for a Sensor
Add an Advanced Malware policy. 95
Manage Advanced Malware policies
Sensor CLI commands
Analyze Malware Files
View the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense specific details for a detected malware 110
Manager reports for malware detections
Integration with McAfee Threat Intelligence Exchange
Why integrate Network Security Platform with Threat Intelligence Exchange?
How the integration works
Computing the overall file reputation in the Sensor
High-level steps to make the integration work
Enable DXL integration for a domain
Enable DXL integration for a device
Viewing Threat Intelligence Exchange detection in the Manager
Sensor CLI commands specific to Threat Intelligence Exchange
Troubleshooting the integration between Network Security Platform and Threat Intelligence Exchange 125
Integration with McAfee Vulnerability Manager
McAfee Network Security Platform - Vulnerability Manager integration.
Vulnerability Manager installation
Menu options for Vulnerability Manager configuration
Configure Vulnerability Manager settings in Manager
Import non-vulnerability manager report
Vulnerability assessment
Relevance analysis of attacks
Menu options for relevance analysis
Relevance configuration details
Use relevance configuration wizard
Relevance analysis configuration in Manager
Fault messages for Vulnerability Manager scheduler
Support for Vulnerability Manager custom certificates

Generate Vulnerability Manager SSL custom certificate for Manager	65
Import the custom certificates into the Manager keystore	66
Troubleshooting options	67
Reload Vulnerability Manager cache	68
Reset relevancy cache	69
Resubmission of database updates	69
Vulnerability Manager - Certificate Sync and FC Agent issues	69
Error messages	71
Integration with McAfee Host Intrusion Prevention	73
Configure Host Intrusion Prevention details 1	73
Add a Host Intrusion Prevention Sensor. 12	74
Configure the Host Intrusion Prevention Sensor in McAfee ePO	76
Integration with McAfee Logon Collector	78
Benefits	78
Integration requirements	78
Download the software	78
How Network Security Platform - Logon Collector integration works. 12	79
Configuration details for Logon Collector integration	80
Configure integration at the admin domain level	80
Establishment of trust between Network Security Manager and Logon Collector server	81
Display of Logon Collector details	82
Display user details (Logon Collector data) in Attack log	82
Display of Logon Collector details in Network Security Manager reports.	83
Next Generation custom reports	83
Communication error	85
Integration with Intel Security Controller	87
Security challenges in an SDDC	87
Deploying next-generation IPS service to virtual networks	88
Integration with HP Network Automation	39
Configure HP Network Automation in the Manager18	89
Integration of the Manager with SIEM products	92
Manager data available for SIEM products. 19	92
Methods of integration with SIEM products. 19	93
Configure notification methods	94
Configure notifications based on attack severity	94

	Configure notifications per attack	194
	Templates for syslog, email, and pager	195
	Integration for fault information	200
	Integration using reports	203
	Data mining	203
	IV_ALERT_DATA decoding	237
	IPS alerts	237
	NTBA alerts	241
	File Reputation alert	250
	Information on database queries	253
	SQL query guidelines	253
	Implications of database queries	253
	Alert synchronization in an MDR deployment.	255
	Create PCAP format packet logs.	256
	Create the PCAP file header and write them into a file	257
	Creating the PCAP packet headers for all regular packets and write them into the file	257
	Create the PCAP packet headers for all fragment packets and write them into the file	258
	Enable communication between Syslog server and the Manager	259
	Create a database user in a MLOS system.	259
S	or data available for MIB browsers	262

Sensor data available for MIB browsers	262
Integrate an SNMP MIB browser with a Sensor	262
Configure the SNMPv3 user details on the MIB browser.	262
Load the Sensor MIBs onto to your MIB browser	263

Integration with McAfee ePO

McAfee ePO is a scalable platform for centralized policy management and enforcement of your system security products such as anti-virus, desktop firewall, and anti-spyware applications. You can integrate McAfee Network Security Platform [formerly McAfee® IntruShield®] with McAfee ePO. The integration enables you to query McAfee ePO server from the Manager for viewing details of a network host.

The integration of Network Security Platform with McAfee ePO version is based on their compatibility. The current Network Security Platform version supports integrating with the current release of McAfee ePO and with some previous versions of McAfee ePO.

For more information about McAfee ePO, see the *McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator Product Guide*. You can download the guide from http://www.mcafee.com/us/enterprise/downloads/index.html.

Integrating Network Security Platform and McAfee ePO enables you to send queries to McAfee ePO server to obtain details of the hosts on your network. The details that are fetched from McAfee ePO server include the host type, host name, user name, operating system details, top10 anti-virus events, and the details of system security products installed on the host. You can view these details in the Attack Log. If you have installed McAfee Host IPS [formerly McAfee® Entercept] as part of your McAfee ePO installation, then you can also view the last 10 McAfee Host IPS events for a specific host. These details provide increased visibility and relevance for security administrators performing forensic investigation of security events seen on the network. When you are reviewing alert details for an endpoint in Attack Log, you can view the essential host data such host name, current user, and OS version in the alert details panel.

For more information on McAfee Host Intrusion Prevention events, see *McAfee Host Intrusion Prevention Product Guide*. You can download the guide from http://www.mcafee.com/us/enterprise/downloads/index.html.

Consider the following scenario to understand how Network Security Platform -McAfee ePO integration works:

You notice in the Attack Log that a host in your network is port scanning the other hosts. You want to know more details about the source of these attacks. You can then double-click on an alert and see the details of the source IP address. The Manager sends queries to McAfee ePO server. You can view the host details by clicking on the exclamation icon next to the IP address. From these details, you may realize for example, that VirusScan (McAfee's antivirus application) is outdated. Looking at the host name, you may also realize that it is the server that was taken off the network sometime back. Therefore, the VirusScan was not updated during this period.

In addition to these features, you may also assign tags through the Threat Explorer of the Manager. For more information on tags, see Tags.

McAfee ePO provides you the option to view Network Security Platform data on a dashboard.

This dashboard in McAfee ePO provides the following monitors:

- Attack Severity Summary
- Device Fault Summary

- Manager Fault Summary
- Top 10 Attack Destinations
- Top 10 Attacks
- Top 10 Attack Sources

Endpoint details query from the McAfee ePO server

After you enable Network Security Platform-McAfee ePO integration at an admin domain level, you can view the details of the corresponding network endpoints using the Attack Log. If you have installed McAfee Host Intrusion Prevention software and if the Host Intrusion Prevention is running on the endpoint, then you can view the top 10 McAfee Host Intrusion Prevention events for an endpoint as well.

Consider the following example. *My Company* is the root admin domain and *HR* and *Finance* are its child domains. *Sensor-HR* and *Sensor-Fin* are the respective Sensors of the two child domains. Assume that the Manager-McAfee ePO integration is enabled only for *Finance*. For an attack detected by *Sensor-Fin*, you can view the details of the source and destination endpoints from Attack Log because McAfee ePO integration is enabled for the *Finance* admin domain.

Note that for you to view the details, the information should be available on the McAfee ePO server. For example, if an attack is from outside your network, then your McAfee ePO server may not have any information about this source endpoint.

🗹 Note

The Network Security Platform extension running on McAfee ePO must be compatible with your current version of Network Security Platform. Consider that you integrated McAfee ePO with the earlier version of Network Security Platform, and then subsequently you upgraded Network Security Platform. Then the integration with McAfee ePO might not work as expected because the Network Security Platform extension on McAfee ePO is from an old installation. This extension might not be compatible with your current version of Network Security Platform. To verify this, you can use the **Test Connection** button in step 2 of the **ePO Configuration Wizard** in your current Manager. If the Network Security Platform extension is incompatible, then an error message is displayed along with the minimum required version for the extension.

An endpoint can belong to one of the following three types:

- Managed Endpoints These are endpoints currently managed by McAfee ePO agent.
- Unmanaged Endpoints These are endpoints recognized by McAfee ePO but are not currently managed by any McAfee ePO agent.
- Unrecognized Endpoints These are endpoints about which McAfee ePO has no information. In the Attack Log, an unrecognized endpoint is represented by a series of ellipses (- -).

You can view the details of the source and destination endpoints in an alert. Alternatively, you can also enter the IP address and get the details from the McAfee ePO server. These details may enable you to troubleshoot and fix any security-related issues in those endpoints. In the Attack Log, you can view the details of managed and unmanaged endpoints but not for unrecognized endpoints.

🗹 Note

If you modify the McAfee ePO server settings, re-launch the Attack Log to view the endpoint details.

Tags

Network Security Platform now provides you the ability to assign tags to source or destination endpoints managed by McAfee ePO. Tags assist a security analyst in identifying endpoints that do not meet security requirements on your network. To learn more about tags and their assignment through the Manager, see Tags.

Additional details for managed endpoints

For managed and unmanaged endpoints, you can click on the information icon next to the IP address to view additional details. These additional details are related to the point-products installed by ePO on the endpoint.

🗹 Note

In order for these additional details to appear, you must have selected the **Enable Endpoint Detail Queries?** check-box in the **Enable ePO Integration** page of the Manager.

If you have installed Host Intrusion Prevention and if it is also running on the endpoint, then you can view the last 10 Host Intrusion Prevention in the endpoint as well. Note that the last 10 events displayed are sorted based on their severity levels.

🗹 Note

A Host Intrusion Prevention event is an alert generated by Host Intrusion Prevention regarding an activity on the endpoint. For more information, see *McAfee Host Intrusion Prevention* documentation.

Based on the additional details and the events, you can tune the security applications on the endpoint for the best possible protection.

You can view the following are the details for the managed endpoint on the **Endpoint Information** tab:

Option	Definitions
Country	Country of the endpoint.
DNS Name	DNS name of the endpoint to resolve the names to IP addresses.
NetBIOS Name	NetBIOS name of the endpoint to access the host machines.
Operating System	Operating system platform of the endpoint.
Device Type	Type of the Sensor (for example, IPS Sensor).
MAC Address	MAC address of the endpoint.

Option	Definitions
Domain/Workgroup	Domain or workgroup of the endpoint.
User	Operating system user name of the endpoint.
Data Source	Database tables from where information is retrieved.
McAfee Agent Check-In Time	Check-in time of the McAfee Agent that communicates with the same ePO server integrated with the admin domain.
Endpoint Type	 Type of endpoint: UNMANAGED (No Agent) — This indicates that there is no McAfee Agent installed on the endpoint. UNMANAGED (MANAGED) — This indicates that the endpoint has a McAfee Agent but there is no active communication channel between the Agent and ePO server integrated with the admin domain.
Installed Products	List of the installed products.

Click the **Endpoint Security Events** tab to view the following information on the latest 10 Host Intrusion Prevention and antivirus events.

Field	Description			
Latest Anti Virus Events	The latest events including the date and time when the event was received by the anti virus agent, the name of the threat that caused the event to appear, the type of the threat that triggered the event, and the action taken by the anti virus agent on the reported event.			
Latest Host Intrusion Prevention Events	The latest host intrusion prevention events including the date and time when the event was received by the Host Intrusion Prevention agent, the name of the signature that caused the event to appear, the ID of the Host Intrusion Prevention signature that caused the event to appear.			

Start McAfee ePO console

You can view details for an endpoint by starting the McAfee ePO console from the Attack Log itself.

Task

- 1. Select Analysis \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Attack Log.
- 2. Double-click the alert for which you want to view the details. The alert details panel opens.
- 3. In the **Summary** tab under the **Attaker/Target** section, click the information icon next to the source or target IP address. The **Attacker IP address – <IP address>** or the **Target IP address – <IP address>** pop-up opens.

Endpoint information

Endpoint Information	Vulnerability Assess	ment Endpo	oint Security Eve	ents			
Copen ePO Consol	e				Search		C
Latest Anti Virus Eve	ents						~
Event Time	Threat Name				Threat T	ype	Action Ta
Nov 13 11:12	Common Standa	rd Protection:Pr	event termination	of	access p	rotecti	deny terr
Nov 13 11:12	Common Standa	rd Protection:Pr	event termination	of	access p	rotecti	deny terr
Nov 13 11:12	Common Standa	rd Protection:Pr	event termination	of	access p	rotecti	deny terr
Nov 13 11:12	Common Standa	rd Protection:Pr	eventtermination	of	access p	rotecti	deny terr
Nov 13 11:12	Common Standa	Common Standard Protection:Prevent termination of				rotecti	deny terr
Nov 13 11:12	Common Standa	Common Standard Protection:Prevent termination of				rotecti	deny terr
Nov 13 11:12	Common Standa	Common Standard Protection:Prevent termination of			access p	rotecti	deny terr
Nov 13 11:12	Common Standa	Common Standard Protection:Prevent termination of			access p	rotecti	deny terr
Nov 13 11:12	Common Standa	Common Standard Protection:Prevent termination of			access p	rotecti	deny terr
Nov 13 11:12	Common Standa	Common Standard Protection:Prevent termination of			access p	rotecti	deny terr
•							•
Latest Host Intrusio	n Prevention Event	s					~
Event Time	Signature	Severity	User	Proc	ess	Src IP	
Nov 12 17:34	Suspicious	High	NSP-QA1\A	C:\W	INDO	10.213.	17.152
Nov 12 17:27	Suspicious	High	NSP-QA1\A	C:\W	INDO	10.213.	17.152

4. Click Endpoint Security Events and then click Open ePO console.

The actions that you can do on the McAfee ePO console will be based on the permissions assigned to the user credentials that you enter during McAfee ePO server configuration.

Additional details for unmanaged endpoints

Unmanaged endpoints do not have an McAfee ePO agent to manage their point-products. The following are the additional details that you can view for unmanaged endpoints:

Field	Description	
DNS	DNS name of the endpoint.	
NetBIOS name	NetBIOS name of the endpoint.	

Field	Description
IP Address	IP address of the endpoint.
MAC Address	MAC address of endpoint.
Endpoint Type	 One of the following is displayed as Endpoint Type: UNMANAGED (No Agent)— This indicates that there is no McAfee Agent installed on the endpoint. UNMANAGED (MANAGED)— This indicates that the endpoint has a Host Intrusion Prevention but there is no active communication channel between the Agent and ePO server integrated with the admin domain.
Last detection time	The date and time when the endpoint was detected on the network.
Operating system	The operating system platform on the endpoint. For example: Windows 2003.
User(s)	Operating system user names of the endpoint.
Source ePO server	The IP address of the ePO server that sent the unmanaged endpoint details.

Install Network Security Platform extension file in McAfee ePO

To install the extension for Network Security Platform in McAfee ePO, do the following:

Task

- 1. Log onto the Manager.
- 2. Navigate to Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow ePO \rightarrow ePO Integration. The Enable ePO Integration page is displayed.
- 3. Enable the required options for McAfee ePO integration.(Optional) Select the checkbox for the Enable Endpoint Summary Queries? option.

Enabling this option allows you to view the essential host data such as, host name, current user, and OS version in the Attack Log. The summary is visible in the alerts details panel only when the McAfee ePO[™] integration is also enabled in the Manager.

(Optional) Select the checkbox for the **Enable Endpoint Detail Queries?** option.

(Optional) Select the checkbox for the **Enable Endpoint Tagging?** option.

This option enables you to assign tags created in McAfee ePO to managed endpoints.

🗹 Note

At least one of the above options has to be selected for McAfee ePO integration.

Enable ePO Integration area

/My Company > Integration > ePO > eP	PO Integration						
When this integration is enabled, the Manager takes advantage of the rich endpoint information available in McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator (ePO) to provide context and improve event analysis. Use this page to enable specific integration points.							
Enable ePO Integration							
Show summary information tool tips during	endpoint analysis, including hostname, current user, and OS version. (Threat Analyzer only)						
Enable Endpoint Summary Queries?							
	Show endpoint details during analysis, including operating system, ePO-installed products, and recent security events.						
Note: When this option is enabled, ePO data is also used to optimize the accuracy of the passive device profiling option.							
Enable Endpoint Detail Queries?							
Allow the NSM admin to tag a managed endpoint within ePO. (Requires an ePO username with read-write permissions.)							
Enable Endpoint Tagging?							
ePo Configuration Wizard	step 1 of 2 Next >						

4. Click Next to view ePO Server Settings page.

ePO Server Settings area

/My Company > Integration > ePO > ePO Integr	ation		?						
Use this page to specify the ePO server and its listenir	Use this page to specify the ePO server and its listening port, and the credentials the Manager uses when communicating with ePO.								
ePO integration requires the NSP Extension for ePO to	ePO integration requires the NSP Extension for ePO to be installed on the ePO server. To install the NSP Extension for ePO:								
 Download the extension from here: <u>NSP Extension for ePO</u> From the ePO console, go to Menu > Software > Extensions and install it. From this page, enter the required information, confirm connectivity, and finish this wizard. 									
Tip: To optimize security, we recommended you use a	local ePO user account with view-only permissions.								
Fields marked with an asterisk (st) are required.									
ePO Server Settings									
Server Name or IP Address:		*							
Server Port:		*							
User Name:		*							
Password:		*							
			Test Connection						

5. Click NSP Extension for ePO link to download the NSPExtension.zip file.

🗹 Note

If this is an existing deployment using an obsolete version of the extension, you are prompted to update to the minimum require version.

step 2 of 2

File Download dialog

ePo Configuration Wizard

	Opening NSPExtension.zip	×
You have chosen to o	pen:	
🔍 NSPExtension.z	ip	
which is: WinZip	o File (4.2 MB)	
from: https://10	.213.174.211	
What should Firefox	do with this file?	
Open with	WinZip (default) V	
Save File		
🗌 Do this <u>a</u> utom	atically for files like this from now on.	
	OK Cancel	
	OK Cancel	

6. Save **NSPExtension.zip** in a convenient location.

< Back Finish

Extensions page

You can also copy the product extension zip file from Manager installation folder in the following location : C:\ Program Files \ McAfee\ Manager \App\EPOExtension.

- Log onto the McAfee ePO console.
 The McAfee ePO console Home page is displayed.
- 8. Click \blacksquare , navigates to **Software** \rightarrow **Extensions** page.
- 9. Click **Install Extension** at the top of the page.
- 10. Browse and select **NSPExtension.zip** from the location mentioned in step 5.

Once installed, the Manager is listed under the **Extensions** list. For more details on installation procedure for extension files, refer McAfee ePO documentation.

Dashboards M McAfee Protection Workspace System Tree Queries & Reports Policy Catalog Security Resources Software Extensions Install Extension Extensions McAfee Agent Search х McAfee Agent Smart Scheduler McAfee Client Proxy Network Security Installed Modules: Network Security Platform Running Remove Name: Status: McAfee DXL Platform **Requires:** • ePO Core 5.9.0 Version 9.2.1.1 McAfee Security for Microsoft E> admin - March 4, 2019 10:32:56 PM PST Installed by: Details: NSP Extension for ePO McAfee Security for Microsoft SI mohile MVISION Endpoint 1811 MVISION Mobile Network Security Platform Rogue System Detection Server Shared Components SiteAdvisor Enterprise Solidcore VirusScan Enterprise ✓ Third Party

Tags

Tags in McAfee ePO assist you to identify and sort managed endpoints. If you are a McAfee ePO administrator it is crucial for you to be able to identify individual endpoints or groups of endpoints when you create tasks and queries. Tags and tag groups make this task of identification simpler. For more details about tags and how they can be best used to benefit your network, refer to chapters *The System Tree* and *Tags* in the *McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator 5.10.0 Product Guide*.

If McAfee ePO is integrated with Network Security Platform, which identifies endpoints by their IP addresses while McAfee ePO identifies endpoints by a unique ID, there are likely going to be events triggered in the Manager in Network Security Platform which are suspicious or confirmed malicious. In such instances between the time that an endpoint IP address is identified as suspicious and the time that the McAfee ePO administrator tags the endpoint for further action, the IP address of the endpoint might have changed. To overcome this lag, the security analyst is provided a list of tags within the Manager in Network Security Platform. These tags are defined in McAfee ePO and are communicated to the Manager in real-time.

1 | Integration with McAfee ePO

🗹 Note

Tags can be assigned only to managed endpoints, that is endpoints that are running a compatible version of the McAfee Agent.

Assign McAfee ePO tags to endpoints through the Threat Explorer

Before you begin

To assign tags from the Manager, make sure you have enabled the **Enable Endpoint Tagging?** checkbox in the **Enable ePO Integration** page in the Manager.

You are able to assign tags to endpoints, managed by McAfee ePO, through the Threat Explorer of the Manager. These assignments reflect in McAfee ePO in real-time.

Task

1. Go to Analysis \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Threat Explorer.

🗹 Note

You must select a domain in which integration with McAfee ePO is enabled. The integration must also have enabled endpoint tagging in the Manager.

2. Click on an IP address from the **Top Attackers** or **Top Targets** panel. Details about the IP address appear.

Endpoint Information tab

Target IP Address - 10	D.			
				Optional Tab
Endpoint Information	Vulnerability Assessment	Endpoint Security Events		
\div Network Forensics	💧 🖕 Quarantine 🔰 🕞	Tag (in ePO)		
Country:		Domain/Workgroup:	WORKGROUP	Agent (4.8.0.1938)
DNS Name:		User:	administrator	Host Intrusion Prevention (8.0.0.3363)
NetBIOS Name:	WIN-OKLOF1E1BU2	Data Source:	ePO (10.)	MCDATREP1000 (1.0.3.368)
Operating System:		McAfee Agent Check-In Time:	Thu Jan 14 16:07:25 IST 2016	Product Coverage Reports (4.8.0.1938)
Device Type:		Endpoint Type:	MANAGED	Product Improvement Program (1.5.1.604)
MAC Address:	782bcba7298f			VirusScan Enterprise (8.8.0.1385)
				Engine: 5700.7163
				Virus Definitions: 8042.0000

3. Within the Endpoint Information tab, look for the Endpoint Type.

You are able to assign tags only to endpoints that denote the **Endpoint Type** as **MANAGED**, which means that that endpoint is managed by McAfee ePO using the McAfee Agent.

4. If the endpoint is managed, click the **Tag (in ePO)** button.

The **Tag Endpoint** pop-up window appears with the IP address of the endpoint that you are about to tag, the ePO server that you have integrated with, and a drop-down list of tags you can assign. These tags are created in McAfee ePO.

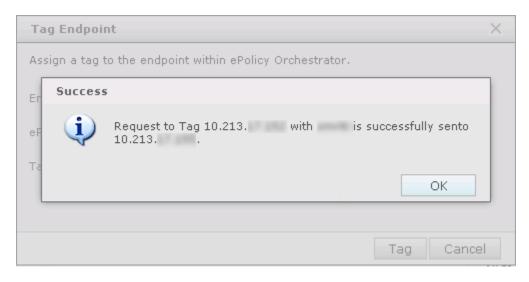
Drop-down contains the list of tags created in McAfee ePO

Tag Endpoint		×
Assign a tag to the endpoint within	ePolicy Orchestrator.	
Endpoint:	161.69.	
ePO Server:	10.213.	
Tag to Assign:	Server C	Tag
Target Country	Server	
🔚 India	Workstation	1

5. Select the tag you want to assign and click **Tag**.

If the assignment is successful, you receive a message stating that.

Tagging successful



If you have selected an unmanaged endpoint or the tagging is unsuccessful for another reason, you receive a message stating the failure.

Tagging fails when the endpoint is not managed by McAfee ePO



Results

The tag is assigned to the endpoint. You will be able to view it in McAfee ePO. To see the steps you need to follow to view the tags, see View tags in McAfee ePO

Assign McAfee ePO tags to endpoints through the Attack Log

Before you begin

To assign tags from the Manager, make sure you have enabled the **Enable Endpoint Tagging?** checkbox in the **Enable ePO Integration** page in the Manager.

You are also able to assign tags to endpoints, managed by McAfee ePO, directly through Attack Log of the Manager. This facility makes it simple for any security analyst who notices an alert in the Attack Log to identify a suspicious or vulnerable endpoint and, beyond quarantining it, mark it for further action. These assignments also reflect in McAfee ePO in real-time.

Task

- 1. Go to Analysis \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Attack Log.
 - 🗹 Note

You must select a domain in which integration with McAfee ePO is enabled. The integration must also have enabled endpoint tagging in the Manager.

- 2. Select the alert whose attacker or target IP address you want to tag in ePO. Click **Other Actions** at the bottom of the page.
- 3. Go to **Tag Endpoint** \rightarrow **in ePO** and select the attacker IP address or the target IP address you want to tag.

The **Tag Endpoint** pop-up appears with the IP address of the endpoint that you are about to tag, the ePO server that you have integrated with, and a drop-down list of tags you can assign. These tags must already have been created in McAfee ePO. If the tag does not show up in the list, click the refresh icon.

Tag an endpoint from Attack Log

Tag Endpoint		×
Assign a tag to the endpoint within	ePolicy Orchestrator.	
Endpoint:	7.6.24.54	
ePO Server:		
Tag to Assign:	<select> C</select>	
	Server	
	Workstation	Тад

🗹 Note

Remember you allowed to assign tags only to managed endpoints, which are endpoints that are managed by McAfee ePO (using the McAfee Agent).

4. Select the tag you want to assign and click Tag.

If the assignment is successful, you receive a message stating as such. If you have selected an unmanaged endpoint or the tagging is unsuccessful for another reason, you receive a message stating the failure.

Results

The tag is assigned to the endpoint. You will be able to view it in McAfee ePO. To see the steps you need to follow to view the tags, see *View tags in McAfee ePO*.

View tags in McAfee ePO

To view tags assigned to endpoints, refer to chapters *The System Tree* and *Tags* in the *McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator 5.10.0 Product Guide*.

Network Security Platform dashboard in McAfee ePO

McAfee ePO provides you the option to view Network Security Platformdata on a dashboard.

This dashboard in McAfee ePO[™] provides the following monitors:

- Attack Severity Summary
- Device Fault Summary
- Manager Fault Summary
- Top 10 Attack Destinations
- Top 10 Attacks
- Top 10 Attack Sources

To view product data in McAfee ePO, you need to install Network Security Platformextension file in McAfee ePO™.

When this Extension file is installed in McAfee ePO[™], a default dashboard with the above monitors is created on McAfee ePO[™] **Dashboards** page. This dashboard displays information from Network Security Platform. Optionally, you can create new dashboards for Network Security Platform in McAfee ePO[™].

A default server task is also created in McAfee ePO[™], as part of the installation of the product extension. This server task needs to be configured for pulling in the relevant data from Network Security Platform. For more details, refer the section Configuring a Server Task for Network Security Platform in McAfee ePO.

Data retrieval when the McAfee® Network Security Manager is in Manager Disaster Recovery (MDR) mode:

Consider the following scenarios when the Manager is in MDR mode:

If the Primary Manager is active, then data is retrieved from the Primary Manager to McAfee ePO[™]. In case the Primary Manager is in standby mode, and the Secondary Manager is active, data is retrieved from the Secondary Manager.

If both Primary and Secondary Managers are in standby mode, then the data that was last available in the Primary Manager is retrieved to McAfee ePO[™], and displayed on the dashboard.

If both Primary and Secondary Manager s are not available, then data is not retrieved to McAfee ePO[™] . In this case, all the dashboard data tables are cleared and empty dashboards are displayed in McAfee ePO[™] .

Configurations

The following configurations are required from McAfee ePO and the Manager, to view Network Security Platform data on the dashboard:

Create a user in the Manager for data retrieval in McAfee ePO

To pull the data from the Manager in McAfee ePO[™], you need to create a user and assign the role **ePO Dashboard Data Retriever** to the user.

To create a user and assign the Data Retriever role in the Manager, do the following:

Task

- 1. From the Manager , select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Users and Roles \rightarrow Users.
- 2. To add the new user, select **New**.
- 3. Enter the details of the user in **Add a User** window.

Note that the **Login ID** and **Password** that you define in this window, is to be entered in the **Actions** page, while configuring a Server Task in McAfee ePO[™].

Users sub-tab

/My Company > Users and Roles >	sers
Fields marked with an asterisk (*) are	
Add a User	•
Add a Oser	
User Credentials	
Login ID:	epo-db-user *
Password:	*
Verify Password:	••••••
User Details	
First and Last Name:	John Doe *
Email:	john_doe@mcafee.com *
Company:	McAfee
Phone:	
Address:	
State:	
Country:	
Role Assignment	
Admin Domain:	/My Company 🔻
Role:	ePO Dashboard Data Retriever 🔻
	Save Cancel

- 4. Click Save, and a message pops up asking whether you need to assign a role to the user. To assign a role, click OK.
- 5. Select the role ePO Dashboard Data Retriever, and click Save.
- 6. The user with the assigned role is displayed in the Users tab, and Role Assignments tab. Note that the Login ID and Password that you define in this window, is to be entered in the Actions page, while configuring a Server Task in McAfee ePO[™].

Configuration of ePO server settings in the Manager

Configuring McAfee ePO[™] server settings in the Manager involves configuring ePO server details.

Configure McAfee ePO server details

The integration between the Manager and McAfee ePO^{M} server is with the help of an extension file, which needs to be installed on the McAfee ePO^{M} server. You can download the extension file from the Manager. Before you configure McAfee ePO^{M} server settings, follow the steps mentioned in Install Network Security Platform extension file in McAfee ePO to install the extension file on the McAfee ePO^{M} server. Following this, you need to configure McAfee ePO^{M} server settings on the Manager.

To integrate the Manager with McAfee ePO[™] , perform the following steps:

Task

1. Navigate to Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow ePO \rightarrow ePO Integration \rightarrow Enable ePO Integration \rightarrow ePO Server Settings.

ePO Server Settings

/My Company > Integration > ePO > ePO Integration

Use this page to specify the ePO server and its listening port, and the credentials the Manager uses when communicating with ePO.

ePO integration requires the NSP Extension for ePO to be installed on the ePO server. To install the NSP Extension for ePO:

- Download the extension from here: <u>NSP Extension for ePO</u>
 From the ePO console, go to Menu > Software > Extensions and install it.
 From this page, enter the required information, confirm connectivity, and finish this wizard.

Tip: To optimize security, we recommended you use a local ePO user account with view-only permissions.

Fields marked with an asterisk (*) are required.

ePO S	Server Settings		
Serve	er Name or IP Address:	10.201	*
Serve	er Port:	0447	*
User I	Name:	admin	*
Passw	vord:	••••	*

```
ePo Configuration Wizard
```

step 2 of 2

2. Specify the ePO server details as described in the following table.

Field	Description
Server Name or IP Address	Enter the name or the IP address of the ePO server running the extension file. Note that this ePO server should have the details of the hosts covered by the admin domain. Contact your ePO administrator for the server name and IP address.
Server Port	Specify the HTTPS listening port on the ePO server that will be used for the Manager-ePO communication. Contact your ePO administrator for the port number.
User Name	Enter the username to be used while connecting to the ePO server. McAfee recommends you create an ePO user account with View-only permissions required for integration.
Password	Enter the password for connecting to the ePO server.

- 3. Click **Test Connection** to ensure that the Extension file is installed and started on the McAfee ePO server.
- 4. If the connection is up, then click **Finish** to save the configuration.

Configuring McAfee ePO server for separate admin domains

< Back

Finish

You can enable or disable the Manager -McAfee ePO integration for an admin domain. If you enable the Manager -McAfee ePO integration for an admin domain, then you can view the details for the hosts of that admin domain from the Attack Log.

If you have more than one instance of McAfee ePO, then the admin domains can be configured to different McAfee ePO servers. However, you should plan your deployment in such a way that an admin domain is configured with the appropriate McAfee ePO server. For example, if you have an exclusive McAfee ePO server for your Branch Office, then the Branch Office Admin Domain should be configured to the Branch Office McAfee ePO server.

🗹 Note

For more information on ePO refer to McAfee ePO documentation.

Viewing McAfee ePO configuration details

To view the McAfee ePO[™] configuration details of an admin domain:

• From the Manager, select Manager → <Admin Domain Name> → Integration → ePO → Summary.

🗹 Note

To view the Network Security Platform- McAfee ePO[™] configuration details of multiple Admin Domains, you can use the **Admin Domains and Users** configuration report.

Configure a server task for Network Security Platform in McAfee ePO

As mentioned earlier, a default server task is created as part of extension file installation. This server task can be scheduled for pulling in data to McAfee ePO from Network Security Platform.

The default server task needs to be configured to provide the user (with **ePO Dashboard Data Retriever** role) with the required credentials, so that data retrieval process takes place to McAfee ePO.

To configure the default server task in McAfee ePO, do the following:

Task

- 1. From McAfee ePO home page menu, click 💻
- 2. Select Automation \rightarrow Server Tasks.

The default server task is displayed in the main Server Tasks tab.

Server Tasks tab

	oards System	Tree Queries & Reports	Policy Catalog	Security Resources			
utomation							
Server Tasks New Task Impe	ort Tasks						
ver Tasks							
uick find: Apply Clear	Show selec	ted rows					
Name	Status	Туре	Schedule	Next Run	Last Run	Actions	
Apply TIESERVER Tags to TIE Servers	Enabled	System	Daily	11/21/18 12:15 AM	11/20/18 3:46 AM	View Edit Run	
Disaster Recovery Snapshot Server	Enabled	System	Daily	11/21/18 1:59 AM	11/20/18 3:48 AM	View Edit Run	
Download Software Product List	Enabled	User	Daily	11/21/18 1:56 AM	11/20/18 3:47 AM	View Edit Run	
Duplicate Agent GUID - clear error count	Disabled	User	Weekly	No next runtime	Task has never run	View Edit Run	
Duplicate Agent GUID - remove systems with	p Disabled	User			Task has never run	View Edit Run	
Endpoint Security Firewall Property Translator	Disabled	System	Daily	No next runtime	Task has never run	View Edit Run	
ePO	Enabled	User	Daily	11/21/18 5:30 PM	11/20/18 5:30 PM	View Edit Run	
ePO Database Index Maintenance	Enabled	System	Weekly	11/25/18 4:00 AM	11/18/18 8:42 PM	View Edit Run	
Generate Records for McAfee Agent Compliant	x Enabled	User	Weekly	11/25/18 1:00 AM	11/18/18 8:42 PM	View Edit Run	
Host IPS 8.0 Catalog Maintenance Task	Disabled	System	Daily	No next runtime	Task has never run	View Edit Run	
Host IPS 8.0 Property Translator	Disabled	User			Task has never run	View Edit Run	
Inactive Agent Cleanup Task	Disabled	User	Weekly	No next runtime	Task has never run	View Edit Run	
LdapSync: Sync across users from LDAP	Enabled	System	Daily	11/21/18 12:00 AM	11/20/18 4:00 PM	View Edit Run	
Manage DXL Brokers	Enabled	System	Daily	11/21/18 12:00 AM	11/20/18 3:46 AM	View Edit Run	
NSP: Dashboard Data Updating Task	Enabled	User	Advanced	11/20/18 8:00 PM	11/20/18 7:55 PM	View Edit Run	
Purge Threat and Client Events Older than 90	E Disabled	User	Daily	No next runtime	Task has never run	View Edit Run	
Roll up Data (Local McAfee ePO server)	Disabled	User			Task has never run	View Edit Run	
Send DXL Certificate Revocations	Enabled	System	Daily	11/21/18 12:00 AM	11/20/18 3:45 AM	View Edit Run	
Send DXL State Event	Disabled	System			Task has never run	View Edit Run	Activate Windows

3. In the **Server Tasks** page, select the task and click **Actions** and select any task to manage the server task.

erver Tas	KS New Task	Import Tasks					
er Tasks							H
ick find:	Apply G	Clear Sh	ow selected rows				
Name	~	Status	Туре	Schedule	Next Run	Last Run	Actions
Manage DXL Broke	rs	Enabled	System	Daily	11/24/18 12:00 AM	11/23/18 12:00 AM	View Edit Run
NSP: Dashboard Da	ata Updating Task	Enabled	User	Advanced	11/23/18 2:35 AM	11/23/18 2:30 AM	View Edit Run
Purge Threat and C	lient Events Older than	n Disabled	User	Daily	No next runtime	Task has never run	View Edit Run
	1cAfee ePO server)	Disabled	User	Weekly	No next runtime	Task has never run	View Edit Run
Choose Columns	Revocations	Enabled	System	Daily	11/24/18 12:00 AM	11/23/18 12:00 AM	View Edit Run
Delete	1t	Disabled	System	Daily	No next runtime	Task has never run	View Edit Run
Disable Tasks	Policies	Disabled	User	Daily	No next runtime	Task has never run	View Edit Run
Duplicate	Tasks	Disabled	User	Daily	No next runtime	Task has never run	View Edit Run
Edit	agement	Enabled	System	Daily	11/24/18 12:30 AM	11/23/18 12:30 AM	View Edit Run
Enable Tasks	Maintenance	Enabled	System	Weekly	11/25/18 2:00 AM	11/18/18 8:42 PM	View Edit Run
Export Table	g	Enabled	System	Daily	11/23/18 3:15 AM	11/23/18 2:15 AM	View Edit Run
Export Tasks	ize CA	Enabled	System	Daily	11/24/18 12:15 AM	11/23/18 12:15 AM	View Edit Run
Export reaks	ize Topology	Enabled	System	Daily	11/24/18 12:15 AM	11/23/18 12:15 AM	View Edit Run

Server tasks management

4. To configure the Server task, click **Edit**. The **Server Task Builder** is displayed.

Server Task Builder page

≡ 🔀 McAfee	Dashboards System 1	ree Queries & Reports F	Policy Catalog Security Resources		.
Automation Server Tasks					
Server Task Builder	1 Description	2 Actions	3 Schedule	A Summary	
Name:	NSP: Dashboard Data Upda	ting Task			
Notes:	Server task to pull data from	n Network Security Manager at the s	pecified interval to populate NSP dashboard		
Schedule status:	Enabled Disabled				
				Back Next	Save Cancel

- 5. Edit the name of the server, if required.
- 6. Select the **Schedule status** as **Enabled**.
- 7. Select Next. In the Actions configuration, select NSP: Dashboard Pull Task.

Actions option

Automation Server Tasks

				_			
Server Task Bu	ilder 1 Description		2 Actions	3 Schedule	> 4 Sun	nmary	
What actions do	you want the task to take?						
 1. Actions: 	NSP: Dashboard Data pull task	\sim					- +
Manager	LdapSync: Sync across users from LDAP	*					
Primary M Secondar	Load Systems by the		*				
Port	Migrate Data to New Tables						
Usernam Password	NSP: Dashboard Data pull task		*				
Confirm F	Product License Usage: Count by Product		*				
	Product License Usage: Entitlement Informatio	n					
	Purge Audit Log						
	Purge Client Events	-					
					Back	Next Save	Cancel

- 8. The page refreshes and displays the following fields, related to the Manager.
 - Manager Type (Standalone or MDR)
 - Primary Manager IP
 - Secondary Manager IP
 - Port
 - Username
 - Password

Confirm Password

🗹 Note

When you select Manager Type as Standalone, you need to enter only the Primary Manager IP address, (an asterisk sign is displayed near Primary Manager IP address indicating that this is the required field).

🗹 Note

When you select Manager Type as MDR, you need to enter both Primary Manager IP address and Secondary Manager IP address. The Secondary Manager IP address corresponds to the IP address of the Secondary Manager in an MDR pair.

🗹 Note

The user name and password to be entered is the Login ID and Password of the user with **ePO Dashboard Data Retriever** role, which you have defined in the Manager.

9. Edit the required fields and select **Next**.

Server Task Builder tab

≡ 🔀 McAfee	Dashboards	System Tree	Queries & Reports	Policy Catalog	Security Resources		_ ~
Automation Server Tasks							
Server Task Builder	1 Description	>	2 Actions	3 Schedule		4 Summary	
Schedule type:	Weekly 🗸						
Start date:	🔲 11 / 23 / 20	18					
End date:	 In / 24 / No end date 	2018					
Schedule:	Weekdays ~	at 🗸	12 ~ : 12 ~ AM ~				- +
						Back Next S	ave Cancel

- 10. Edit the task schedule details, if required.
- 11. Select **Next**. The **Server task summary** is displayed.

Server Task Builder tab

≡ 🗂 McAfee	Dashboards System Tree	e Queries & Reports	Policy Catalog	Security Resources			. ~
Automation Server Tasks							
Server Task Builder	1 Description	2 Actions		3 Schedule	4 Summary		
Name:	NSP: Dashboard Data Updating Tas	k					1
Notes:	Server task to pull data from Netwo	ork Security Manager at the spe	cified interval to popula	te NSP dashboard			
Task owner:	admin						
Schedule status:	Enabled						
Schedule:	Start date: 11/23/18 End date: No end date Scheduled time: Weekdy Weekdys: 11/26/18 Next runtime: 11/26/18 11/27/18 12/17/18 11/28/18 11/28/18	2 AM 2 AM					
Actions:	1. NSP: Dashboard Data pull t Manager Type :Standa Primary Manager IP : Secondary Manager IP : Port :443 Username :admin	one					
					Back N	ext Save	e Cance

12. Select Save.

Create new Network Security Platform dashboards in McAfee ePO (optional)

If you want to create new dashboards for Network Security Platformin McAfee ePO[™] , do the following:

Task

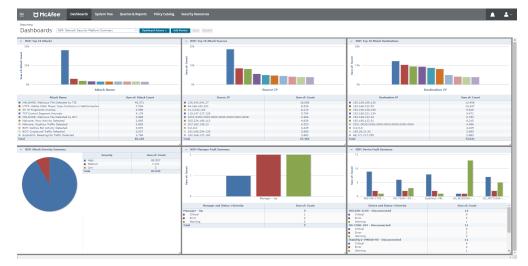
- 1. From McAfee ePO^M home page, click \blacksquare , and select **Menu** \rightarrow **Reporting** \rightarrow **Dashboard**.
- 2. Select Dashboard Actions and click New.
- 3. Type name for the dashboard in **Dashboard Name** field and **Dashboard Visiblity** form drop-down list. For more information on working with Dashboards in McAfee ePO[™], refer the *McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator 5.10.0 Product Guide*.
- 4. Click Add Monitor and choose the Category as Queries.

Select Monitor window

≡ 🛃 McAfee	Dashboards	System Tree	Queries & Reports	Policy Catalog	Security Resources	▲ ▲ ~
Category: All	U Hrafee	Custom URL Viewer	Getting	Started	Malware Detection Trends	Close
						•
4						

- 5. Drag the Queries monitor type to the dashboard and select a Monitor related to Network Security Platform. For example, you can choose Monitor as **NSP: Top 10 Attacks**.
- 6. Select **OK**.
- 7. Configure six different monitors available on the dashboard as per your requirements.
- 8. Click **Save**. The new dashboard tab is displayed in McAfee ePO^{M} .

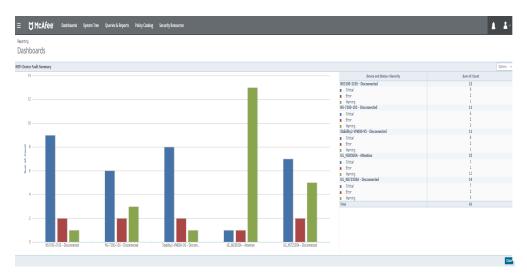
A sample dashboard in McAfee ePO[™] with the data from Network Security Platformis displayed below.



Dashboards tab

9. To get an enlarged view of any of the monitor, click the arrow at the top left corner of the monitor and select **Full Screen**.

NSP Top 10 Attack Destinations window



10. Click **Close** to close the dashboard monitor and return to home page.

Define a permission set in McAfee ePO

To define a minimal permission set in McAfee ePO, you must do the following steps.

- Creating a new Permission Set (minimal permissions)
- · Viewing and editing a permission set

Creating a new permission set

To create a McAfee ePO user and assigning minimal permission, do the following:

Task

In the McAfee ePO Home page, click and select User Management → Permission Sets.
 Permission Sets page appears.

Permission Sets page

≡ 🔰 McAfee	Dashboards System Tree	Queries & Reports Policy Catalog Security Resources	. .
User Management Permission Sets	New Permission Set Import Export All	I	
ermission Sets			
Search × xecutive Reviewer	Name and users:	Executive Reviewer O users O Active Directory group mappings	Edit
lobal Reviewer	Agent Handler:	No permissions	Ed
roup Admin roup Reviewer	Audit Log:	No permissions	Ec
CP Catalog Admin	Automatic Response:		
	Client Events:	No permissions	E
	Client Task Management:		E
	-	No permissions	E
	Common Catalog:	No permissions	E
	Contacts:	Use contacts	E
	Dashboards:	Use public dashboards	E
	DXL McAfee MePO Certificate Creation:	No permissions	E
	Actions ~		

2. Click New Permission Set.

New Permission Set page opens.

New Permission Set window

≡	🕽 McAfee"	Dashboards System Tr	ee Queries & Reports	Policy Catalog	Security Resources		≜ ×
	lanagement mission Sets						
New Pe	rmission Set						
Name:				*			
Users:		 ✓ admin ✓ defaultDxlUser □ mcp-admin ✓ system 					
	Directory groups mapped to mission set:	No Active Directory servers conf	gured. Go to Registered Servers	to configure one.			
						Save	Cancel

- 3. Type the name of the permission set in **Name**.
- 4. Click **Save**. After the permission set is created, it appears on the page.

Permission Sets tab

	Dashboards System Tree (Queries & Reports Policy Catalog Security Resources	▲ ≛
User Management Permission Sets	New Permission Set Import Export All	l .	
Permission Sets			
Search × Executive Reviewer	Name and users:	NSP Permissions 0 users 0 Active Directory group mappings	Ed
Global Reviewer Group Admin	Agent Handler:	No permissions	Ed
Group Reviewer MCP Catalog Admin	Audit Log:	No permissions	Ed
NSP Permissions	Automatic Response:	No permissions	Ed
	Client Events:	No permissions	Ed
	Client Task Management:	No permissions	Ed
	Common Catalog:	No permissions	Ed
	Contacts:	No permissions	Ed
	Dashboards:	No permissions	Ed
	DXL McAfee MePO Certificate Creation:	No permissions	Ed
	Actions ~		

View and edit a permission set

You can view and edit a permission set. To define a new permission set, perform the following steps.

Task

- 1. Click the permission set displayed in the **Permission Sets** page.
- Scroll down to view or edit the settings for defining permission for the following: Click on **Edit**, next to the relevant settings to make changes to the permission set.
 - Network Security Platform To view and change settings

• Systems —							
\equiv \bigcup McAfee	Dashboards Sys	stem Tree	Queries & Reports	Policy Catalog	Security Resources		- ~
User Management Permission Sets							
Edit Permission Set for nsp-permis	sion-set: Systems						
System Tree:	View "System Tree" Note: visibility of groups		vithin the tree is controlled	by the System Tree Acc	ess permission set section		
Actions:	 Wake up agents; view Agent Activity Log Edit System Tree groups and systems Deploy agents Note: Ability to deploy is also controlled by the Agent Handler permission set section. Deploy Agent also needs McAfee Agent: Tasks Change Settings Access for some deployment methods. 						
Tag use:	Apply, exclude, and o	clear tags					
Tag catalog:	 No permissions Create and edit tags and tag groups Create and edit tags, tag groups and tag criteria (also requires "Create and edit private queries" permission) 						
						Save	Cancel

- System Tree: To view the **System Tree** tab
- Tag use: To apply, exclude, and clear tags

🗹 Note

A user can create and edit tags only if the user has a permission set with the option **Create and edit tags and tag groups** enabled.

• System Tree access — To search and access the nodes and portions of the System Tree

Permission Sets page

E 🖞 McAfee	Dashboards System Tree	Queries & Reports Policy Catalog Security Resources	
^{ser Management} Permission Sets	New Permission Set Import Export A	2	
mission Sets			
earch X			
utive Reviewer	LDAPI	No permissions	
al Reviewer	McAfee Agent:	No permissions	
ıp Admin			
ip Reviewer	Multi-server roll up data:	No parmissions	
_DOC			
-permission-set	Network Security Platform:	View and change settings	
_nsp	Policy Assignment Rule:	No permissions	
	Policy Management:	No permissions	
	Product Improvement Program:	No parmissions	
	Queries and Reports:	No permissions	
	Registered servers:	No parmissions	
	Report Anonymization:	No permissions	
	Server tasks:	No parmissions	
	Software:	No permissions	
	Software Catalog:	No permissions :	
	Systems:	Verv "System Tree" tab Apply, exclude, and clear tags	
	System Tree accessi	Can search on the following nodes and parts of the System Tree.Ny Organization Can access the following nodes and parts of the System Tree.Ny Organization	
	Threat Event Log:	No parmissions :	

Create McAfee ePO users with minimal permission

You can create McAfee ePO[™] user and assigning minimal permission. To do so, perform the following steps.

Task

1. In the McAfee ePO^M Home page, click and select **User Management** \rightarrow **Users**.

Users page

\equiv \Box McAfee	Dashboards System Tree	Queries & Reports Policy Catalog Security Resources
User Management USERS New User		
Users		
Search ×	User name:	admin
admin	Logon status:	Enabled
defaultDxlUser mcp-admin	Lock Status	Unlocked
system	Authentication type:	ePO authentication
	Full name:	
	Phone number:	
	Email address:	
	Notes:	
	Manually assigned permission sets:	User is an administrator.
	Last logon time	11/23/18 4:15:38 AM
	Actions ~	

2. Click New User.

The **New User** page appears.

New User page

≡ 🔀 McAfee	Dashboards System Tree Queries & Reports Policy Catalog Security Resources
User Management Users	
New User	
User namei	IPS-Administrator The name can contain less than 100 characters. It can't contain leading or trailing spaces, leading backslashes (\), or any of these characters: " ()
Logon status:	Enabled Disabled
Authentication type:	e) e O authentication This graneword for ornerine use only and must be changed during the nest legon. Password: Test graneword: Confing password: User name: Durania: Outhouse authentication User name: Durania: Durani: Durania: Durani: Durania: Durania: Dura
Full name:	(eptional)
Email address:	(cational)
Phone number:	(optional)
Notes:	(cptional)
Manually assigned permission sets:	Administrator Selected generation sets: Escular Reviewar diobal Revie

3. In the **User name**, type a name.

Logon status shows **Enabled** by default. **Authentication type** is selected as **ePO authentication**, by default. Do not make any changes.

4. In **Password**, type the password.

- 5. In **Confirm Password**, re-type the password.
- 6. (Optional) Enter the Full name, Email address, Phone number, and Notes in their respective fields.
- 7. In **Manually assigned permission sets**, select either **Administrator** or **Selected permission sets**. Select a single or multiple permission sets for **Selected permission sets**.

Check the permission set with minimal permission to be assigned to the user.

🗹 Note

You must define the permission set before assigning it to a user in case of **Selected permission sets**.

8. Click Save.

🗹 Note

After a user is created, **ePo recommends** users to change their password on their first login. This process should be completed before users try to test NSM connection with ePO.

Integration with McAfee Global Threat Intelligence

McAfee® Global Threat Intelligence[™] is a global threat correlation engine and intelligence base of global messaging and communication behavior, which enables the protection of the customers against both known and emerging electronic threats across all threat areas. The communication behavior includes the reputation, volume, and network traffic patterns.

You get complete integration with Global Threat Intelligence (McAfee GTI) in exchange for sending detailed alert information to McAfee. You can report, filter, and sort hosts involved in attacks based on their network reputation and the country of the attack origin by this integration.

Global Threat Intelligence technologies



GTI has two components:

- IP Reputation [formerly TrustedSource] Comprehensive, real-time, cloud-based IP Reputation service to provide
 - Web reputation URL and web domain reputation service to protect against web-based threats
 - Web categorization URL and web domain categorization service to take policy-based action on user web activity as well as protect customers against both known and emerging web-based threats.

•

Message reputation — Message and sender reputation service to protect against message-based threats such as spam

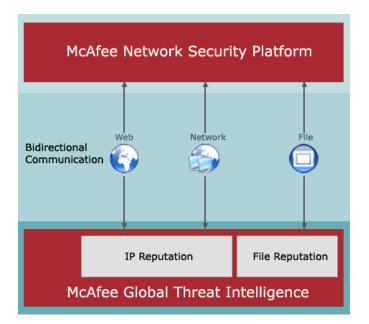
- **Network connection reputation** IP address, network port, and communications protocol reputation service to determine granular reputation intelligence protect against network threats
- **File Reputation [formerly Artemis]** Comprehensive, real-time, cloud-based file reputation service to protect against both known and emerging malware-based threats

Each of these technologies work together to provide information about the threats and vulnerabilities, which gives GTI the ability to predictively adjust reputations across all threat areas and thereby avoid attacks.

How Network Security Platform - GTI integration works

The integration between Network Security Platform and GTI and can be described using the three-part framework shown below.

GTI integration



The top-most tier represents Network Security Platform sending the threat data to GTI. GTI queries the threat data from the Sensors that are deployed in real-world settings.

The middle tier represents the bidirectional communications that occurs between Network Security Platform and GTI. Network Security Platform queries the cloud, and the cloud renders the latest reputation or categorization intelligence to Network Security Platform so that it can take an action.

Finally, the bottom tier represents GTI (IP Reputation and File Reputation) that ensures threat intelligence services like file reputation, web reputation, web categorization, message reputation, and network connection reputation. GTI Queries the threat data from Sensors. With each query, the cloud system learns something new about the subject of the query. This information is then combined with data from other threat vectors to understand cyberthreats from all angles and identify threat relationships, such as malware used in network intrusions, websites embedded in malware code, websites hosting malware, callback activity associations, and more.

The IP Reputation component of GTI helps in SmartBlocking and Connection Limiting.

SmartBlocking activates blocking when high confidence signatures are matched, thus minimizing the possibility of false positives.

Connection limiting policies consist of a set of rules that enable the Sensors to limit the number of connections a host can establish or a connection rate.

When GTI is enabled, the attacks can be detected both for inbound and outbound traffics.

Inbound traffic is that traffic received on the port designated as "Outside" (that is, originating from outside the network) in In-line or Tap mode. Typically, inbound traffic is destined to the protected network, such as an enterprise intranet.

Outbound traffic is that traffic sent by a system in your intranet, and is on the port designated as "Inside" (that is, originating from inside the network) in In-line or Tap mode.

The IP Reputation is applicable for every connection but it is used differently for inbound and outbound connections:

• For outbound connection– When GTI is enabled for IP reputation, any "High risk IP" based on IP/port will be smart blocked based on the combination of both IP reputation and BTP signature value.

• For inbound connection – When GTI is enabled and Connection Limiting rules are configured, you can block the malicious traffic received on the inbound connections. For example, you can deploy a Sensor in front of a web server, and enable GTI along with Connection Limiting rules to limit access to the server and prevent DoS attacks.

Network Security Platform integration with Private Global Threat Intelligence (GTI) Cloud

McAfee Private Global Threat Intelligence (GTI) Cloud offers you the option to utilize the GTI information in a private cloud environment.

To integrate with Private GTI Cloud, you will need to configure Private Cloud Server IP to point to your Private Cloud instead of default name server IP. Private Cloud deployments are typically intended to operate in an air gapped environment.

The integration of Network Security Platform with Private GTI Cloud enables appliances and services to retrieve IP Reputation and File Reputation to more accurately filter communications and protect electronic communications and transactions between people, companies, and countries.

The Manager maps the country codes received from Private GTI Cloud IP Reputation to the country, and displays in the Attack Log page. IP Reputation can also be used to create Connection Limiting rules and SmartBlocking.

🗹 Note

This feature is only available in NS-series and Virtual IPS Sensors running Sensor software version 9.2.

Configuring Private Cloud in Manager

Before you begin

To integrate the Private GTI Cloud with Network Security Platform you need to have the following:

- The IP address for the Private GTI Cloud server.
- ZIP file that contains the following files in the PEM format:
 - Network Security Platform certificate
 - Private key for Network Security Platform certificate
 - Private GTI Cloud CA certificate

To integrate with Private GTI Cloud, you will need to configure Private Cloud Server settings to communicate with the Private GTI Cloud. By default, Network Security Platform is configured to communicate with the McAfee Global Threat Intelligence server.

Complete the following steps to configure the GTI Private Server:

Task

1. Select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow GTI.

/My Company > Integration > GTI	?
Integration with McAfee Global Threat Intelligence (GTI) provides file reputation and endpoint reputation services to NSP. By default, the Manager and its devices consult the public GTI cloud f those services, however, a private GTI cloud can be integrated instead. Use this page to enable integration with a private GTI cloud.	or
Notes:	
 Private cloud integration is supported by IPS sensors running software v9.2+ only. Private cloud integration is not supported by NTBA appliances. Devices that do not support private cloud integration will continue to consult the public cloud, even when private cloud integration is enabled. 	
GTI	
Enable Private GTI Cloud	
Private GTI Cloud Server IP Ex: 10.1.1.1 Address:	
Private GTI Cloud Server • Required Certificate Status:	
Test Connection Import Server Certificate S	ave

- 2. Select Enable Private GTI Cloud Integration.
- 3. Enter the Private GTI Cloud Server IP Address.
- 4. The Private GTI Cloud uses certificates to authenticate solutions that want to consume its services. Click **Import Server Certificate** to import the following certificate files:
 - Network Security Platform certificate
 - Private key for Network Security Platform certificate
 - Private GTI Cloud CA certificate

Import Server Certi	icate	×
to consume its service	uses certificates to authenticate solutions that w s. Use this window to import a ZIP file containin private key and CA certificate (all in PEM forma	ga
ZIP File:	.zip Bro	wse
	Imp	ort

The Import Server Certificate dialog box opens.

🗹 Note

The certificate files and the client private key should be in the PEM format.

The Private GTI Cloud uses the Network Security Platform certificate and private key to authenticate Network Security Platform.

The Network Security Platform uses the Private GTI Cloud CA certificate to authenticate Private GTI Cloud.

- 5. Click Browse.
- 6. Select the .zip file that contains the files.
- 7. Click Import.

Once the import is complete the Manager validates the files. If the validation is successful, the Private GTI Cloud Server

Certificate Status will be displayed as Present.

8. Click Save.

The Manager pushes the Private GTI Cloud configurations to the Sensors connected to the Manager.

Test the connection to the Private Cloud server

After configuring the GTI server, use the Test Connection feature to check if the communication to the Private GTI Server is established:

Task

- 1. Select Manager | <Admin Domain Name> | Integration | GTI.
- 2. Click Test Connection.

The Test Connection dialog box opens.

Test Connection	×
Submit an IP address to confirm the Manager is able to obtain endpoint risk and country from the <u>private</u> GTI cloud.	
Tip: This test is always performed using the cloud that is current in use by the Manager, so be sure to save all changes before you test.	
Enter IP address: Test	

- 3. Enter the IP address to determine the risk and country based on GTI data.
- 4. Click Test.

If the Private GTI Cloud is configured, the reputation of the endpoint from the Private GTI Cloud is displayed. If the Private GTI Cloud is not configured, the reputation of the endpoint from the Public GTI Cloud is displayed. If the connection to both Cloud was not successful, an error is displayed.

The table below shows the list of responses and what they interpret:

Response	What it means	Next steps
Reputation : Unverified Geo: -	GTI communication is successful. There is no information available for the IP address and hence no country flag.	None
Could not connect to the server	 HTTP Status Code 404 Error - AJAX file not found error HTTP Status Code 500 Error - AJAX internal system error AJAX Timeout Errors AJAX Abort Errors Browser/Connectivity Errors 	Check the ems.log file for more information about the issue.
Invalid IP address	The IP address you entered is not valid.	Try another IP address.
Test Connection Failed	The test connection to the GTI server failed.	Check your connection settings before you proceed.

Configure Telemetry

The purpose of GTI is to facilitate you in providing helpful information to McAfee about your usage of Network Security Platform solution so that McAfee in turn optimizes your protection.

To configure Global Threat Intelligence:

Task

 Select Manager → <Admin Domain Name> → Setup → Telemetry. The Telemetry page is displayed.

Telemetry page

/My Company > Setup > Telemetry	?
The better we understand the global landscape, the better we can help protect individual networks. Use this par Fields marked with an asterisk (*) are required.	e to manage telemetry and help McAfee stay ahead of emerging threats.
Telemetry	Show Me What I'm Sending
	Send?
+ Alert Data Details Exclude IP address information for endpoints on this list.	🖲 Yes 🕓 No
+ Alert Data Summary	🖲 Yes 🕓 No
+ General Setup	🖲 Yes 🕓 No
+ Feature Usage	🖲 Yes 🕓 No
+ System Faults	🖲 Yes 🕓 No
+ vNSP Cluster Usage	🔍 Yes 🔘 No
Select the severity alerts to be sent to McAfee.	
Alert Data Details Filter	
Send Alert Details for the Following Severity Alerts:	Low Informational *
Technical Contact Information	
Send Contact Information?	
First Name: John	*
Last Name: Doe	
Street Address:	
Phone Number:	
Email Address: john_doe@mcafee.com	*
Test Connection	Save

🗹 Note

The **Telemetry** pop-up is displayed when you open the Manager for the first time.

Note

The following options are enabled in the **Telemetry** page by default:

- Alert Data Details
- Alert Data Summary
- General Setup
- Feature Usage
- System Faults
- vNSP Cluster Usage

The **vNSP Cluster Usage** option can be configured only when there is a vNSP Cluster in the Manager.

🗹 Note

Telemetry data is stored in the Telemetry server indefinitely.

🗹 Note

If at any point, you want to review what you are sending to the Telemetry server, run the **Default-Telemetry (NSP)** Next Generation report.

2. Select either Alert Data Details or Alert Data Summary to enable GTI IP Reputation integration.

Using the **Telemetry** page, you can configure the following information categories:

• Select **Alert Data Details** for complete integration with GTI IP Reputation. This permits you to report, filter, and sort hosts involved in attacks based on their network reputation and/or country of their origin.

- By selecting this option you can view data in the following columns in **Attack Log** page.
 - Target IP Address
 - Target Risk
 - Attacker IP Address
 - Attacker Risk

• When the **Alert Data Details** option is selected, the following attributes are sent in real time to McAfee Labs for each attack:

- Application Name
- Attack Name
- Attack Time
- Attacker DNS Name
- Attacker IP Address
- Attacker OS
- Attacker Port
- Callback alert information
- Category
- Count
- Detection Mechanism
- Direction of Attack
- For correlated alerts: Triggered component attacks and their connection logs
- For heuristic attacks against Web application servers: Threshold, confidence, weight, and the matched blocked strings
- For ATD attacks: File name, size, type, MD5 hash, UUID, and malware confidence
- Malware Engine Results
- Malware URL
- NSP Attack ID
- Protocol
- Relevance (and method used to determine it)
- Result
- Signature ID
- Sub-Category
- Target DNS Name
- Target IP Address
- Target OS
- Target Port
- Type
- URI

The following alert summary information is sent hourly to McAfee Labs:

- A count of each attack seen
- The list of NSP attack IDs seen

The following general setup information is sent daily to McAfee Labs (so the alert data can be correctly interpreted):

- Manager software version and active signature set version
- You also have the option to exclude data from specific endpoint IP addresses by using the **Exclude IP address** information for endpoints on this list. option in the header.

• Select **Alert Data Summary** to view partial alert details in the **Attack Log**. Using this option you can query McAfee's http://www.trustedsource.org by right-clicking on an alert in the **Attack Log** and view details of the source or destination IP address and port and country of origin.

The following alert summary information is sent hourly to McAfee Labs:

- A count of each attack seen
- The list of NSP attack IDs seen
- The number of alerts whose relevance was determined by each available method
- Top 10 (as per executable confidence) EIA attacks

The following general setup information is sent daily to McAfee Labs (so the alert data can be correctly interpreted):

- Manager software version and active signature set version
- **General Setup** The following general setup information is sent daily to McAfee Labs:
 - A count of devices configured as Failover Pairs, per device model
 - Automatically deployment of new signature sets and Callback Detectors to devices
 - Automatic downloading of signature sets and Callback Detectors from McAfee
 - Is a Central Manager in use?
 - Is Manager Disaster Recovery (MDR) in use?
 - Model and software version of each managed device
 - Manager software version and active signature set version
 - The number of monitoring ports operating in inline, SPAN and tap modes
 - The number of dedicated, CIDR, and VLAN interfaces defined
 - The number of administrative users, the custom roles in use, and the permissions in those roles
 - Is the Manager a Linux Appliance?
 - The operating system of the Manager
- Feature Usage The following feature usage information is sent daily to McAfee Labs:
 - Are inbound MSRPC/SMB fragments being reassembled?
 - Are outbound MSRPC/SMB fragments being reassembled?
 - Callback Detectors status and version
 - · Gateway Anti-Malware engine and DAT versions
 - Is ePO integration enabled?
 - Is TA enabled?
 - Is MVM integration enabled to run vulnerability scans?
 - Is MVM integration enabled to calculate alert relevance?

- Is IPS alert notification enabled (SNMP, syslog, email, pager, script)?
- Is inbound GTI IP reputation lookup enabled?
- Is outbound GTI IP reputation lookup enabled?
- Is GTI IP reputation lookup used to enhance SmartBlocking decisions?
- Is inbound heuristic Web application server protection enabled?
- Is outbound heuristic Web application server protection enabled?
- Is inbound XFF header parsing enabled?
- Is outbound XFF header parsing enabled?
- Is advanced callback detection enabled, and are events sent to NTBA for further analysis?
- Is inbound chunked HTTP response traffic being decoded?
- Is outbound chunked HTTP response traffic being decoded?
- Is inbound HTML-encoded HTTP response traffic being decoded?
- Is outbound HTML-encoded HTTP response traffic being decoded?
- Is inbound base64-encoded SMTP traffic being decoded?
- Is outbound base64-encoded SMTP traffic being decoded?
- The L7 data collected (protocols and their fields)
- The advanced malware policy definitions
- The list of methods enabled for determining alert relevance
- The number of default IPS policies in use
- The number of custom IPS policies in use
- The number of custom McAfee-format attacks in use
- The number of Snort rules in use
- The number of ignore rules defined
- The number of M-series devices with IPS licenses assigned
- The number of sub-interfaces in use
- The number of device-pre firewall policies assigned
- The number of port firewall policies assigned
- The number of interface firewall policies assigned
- The number of device-post firewall policies assigned
- The number of custom dashboards and the monitors they contain
- The number of IPS attack definitions whose default settings have been customized
- The number of custom NextGen reports and their SQL queries
- The number of interfaces with application identification enabled
- The number of IPS devices with ATD integration enabled and malware policies with ATD analysis enabled
- The number of NTBA devices with EIA integration enabled
- The number of Virtual IPS Sensors and Virtual IPS Sensor licenses
- The number of Interfaces using policy group
- The number of custom policy group assigned
- The number of default policy group assigned
- The number of devices enabled inbound SSL decryption
- The number of devices enabled inbound SSL decryption with Diffie-Hellman
- System Faults The following System Fault information is sent daily to McAfee Labs:

- Device Faults
- Manager Faults

🗹 Note

Though these two events are represented separately, they are sent to GTI as a single event.

- **vNSP Cluster Usage** The following data specific to vNSP clusters is sent to McAfee daily:
 - Name and grant ID associated with each Virtual IPS Sensor license
 - Overall license compliance status
 - Total number of allowed virtual Sensors
 - Total number of Virtual Sensors currently in use with vNSP Clusters
 - Total number of Virtual Probes currently in use with vNSP Clusters
 - Maximum number of Virtual Probes used
 - Manager version
- 3. Select Yes on the relevant information categories for which you prefer to send details to McAfee Labs.
 - a. After configuring the Alert Data Details and Alert Data Summary, navigate to the Attack Log page.
 - b. Select the alert and click **Other Actions** \rightarrow **Perform GTI Forensics**.
 - c. Click on attacker or target IP address. A new browser window opens, displaying information about that URL.

Note

If GTI is not enabled in the **Global Threat Intelligence** page, the **Perform GTI Forensics** option is disabled.

- 4. In the **Alert Data Details Filter**, select the type of alert severity, based on which you want to send the information. The available options are:
 - High
 - Medium
 - Low
 - Informational
 - 🗹 Note

The Alert Data Details Filter is displayed only when you select Alert Data Details category.

5. In the **Technical Contact Information**, update the following fields to provide your contact information to McAfee Labs.

- Send Contact Information?
- First Name
- Last Name
- Street Address
- Phone Number
- Email Address

6. To check whether communication to the GTI server is established, click Test Connection.

7. Click Save.

Exclude IP address information for specific endpoints

You can define blocks of addresses to be grouped together. By defining these blocks, the information on any alert containing the IP address matching these blocks will not be sent to McAfee Labs.

To exclude IP address information for hosts:

Task

1. Go to Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Setup \rightarrow Telemetry.

The **Telemetry** page is displayed.

2. Click the **list** hyperlink within **Exclude IP address information for endpoints on this list.** displayed in the **Alert Data Details** section header.

The **Exclusions** dialog is displayed.

Fields marked with an asterisk (*) are required.			
Exclusions			
IP Address:	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Mask Length:	Add to List		
IP Address/Mask List:	10.0.0.9,8 * Remove Selection		
	Save Cancel		

- 3. Enter the IP address for exclusion in the IP Address field.
- 4. Enter the CIDR value for the mask in the **Mask Length** field.

🗹 Note

The CIDR value should be between 0 to 32.

5. Click Add to List.

The IP address, mask length gets added and is displayed in the IP Address/Mask List field.

2 | Integration with McAfee Global Threat Intelligence

🗹 Note

You can remove an item in the IP Address/Mask List by clicking Remove Selection.

6. Click Save.

Network Security Platform-GTI integration for IP Reputation

The integration of Network Security Platform and GTI for IP Reputation [formerly TrustedSource] enables appliances and services to more accurately filter communications and protect electronic communications and transactions between people, companies, and countries.

The Manager maps the country codes received from GTI IP Reputation to the country, and displays in the Attack Log page.

IP Reputation can also be used to create Connection Limiting rules.

🗹 Note

Reputation is actually determined using a combination of IP address and port. The same IP address might therefore have a different reputation depending on the port currently in use.

How Network Security Platform-GTI integration for IP Reputation works

The Manager integrates with the GTI IP Reputation to obtain the reputation scores on hosts and geo-locations that are displayed in Attack Log.

The Sensor requests reputation for hosts from GTI. The reputation score acts as an important factor in determining whether to block the host. The scores are cached for one hour. After an hour the information ages out and if the information is required again, the Sensor makes the GTI request again.

🗹 Note

Cache is not maintained on reboot.

Reputation scores:

- Minimal Risk (<=14)
- Unverified (15 to 29)
- Medium Risk (30 to 49)
- High Risk (> 49)

After a High Risk External IP host is found, the traffic from that host can be blocked or the host itself can be quarantined.

2 Integration with McAfee Global Threat Intelligence

🗹 Note

The terms reputation scores and risk assessment scores are interchangeably used for Sensor and Manager in Network Security Platform.

🗹 Note

DNS must be configured for the Sensor to reach the GTI server.

🗹 Note

HTTPS is used to obtain the reputation of the hosts.

Enhanced SmartBlocking

When IP Reputation is enabled, the Sensor uses the reputation of the source host as an additional factor for blocking which in turn enhances SmartBlocking.

Each attack has a signature set which is in turn associated with a confidence level. Confidence level and reputation score together play the role in Smartblocking an attack. An attack is Smartblocked only when the sum total of the confidence level and the reputation score becomes 6.

Risk levels of the hosts:

- Host is considered malicious— +2 increase in confidence level
- Host is considered of medium risk— +1 increase in confidence level

🗹 Note

Only attacks marked for Smartblocking are considered for IP reputation scores and thus only those attacks are SmartBlocked.

🗹 Note

The reputation score is used along with Benign Trigger Probability to increase the confidence level and make a blocking decision.

New IPS attack definitions are also added for High Risk hosts. This allows you to block/quarantine a host outright if it is a high risk.

This will only happen if :

- The attack definitions are included in the IPS Policy for the interface or sub-interface level.
- GTI is enabled for the interface and sub-interface level.

To optimize performance, you can place certain trusted IP addresses/networks under an exclusion list. The number of entries you can exclude per Sensor are:

Sensor model	Number of exclusion list entries permitted
NS9500 stack - 100 Gbps throughput	128
NS9500 stack - 60 Gbps throughput	128
NS9500 stack - 40 Gbps throughput	128
NS9500 standalone - 30 Gbps throughput	128
NS9500 standalone - 20 Gbps throughput	128
NS9500 standalone - 10 Gbps throughput	128
NS9300, NS9200, NS9100	128
NS7300, NS7200, NS7100	128
NS5200, NS5100	64
NS3500 - 200 Mbps throughput	32
NS3500 - 100 Mbps throughput	32
NS3200, NS3100	32
M-8000, M-6050, M-4050, M-3050	128
M-2950, M-2850	64
M-1450, M-1250	32

Refer to McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide for more details.

Configure Endpoint Reputation for an admin domain

Before you begin

If the Manager is not integrated with McAfee GTI Lookup, you can see the following message: **Please enable sending of Alert Data Details on the Participation page to make integration with GTI Lookup available**. Select **Integration** \rightarrow **Global Threat Intelligence** to enable the integration.

If you configure Endpoint Reputation at an admin domain, you can inherit these settings for the interfaces of the Sensors in this domain. You can also customize these settings for specific interfaces.

Task

 In the Manager, go to Policy → <Admin_Domain_Name> → Intrusion Prevention → Policy Types → Inspection Options Policies.

The Inspection Options Policies page is displayed.

Domain: /My Company	/My Company > Intrusion Prevention > Policy Types > Inspection Options Policies ?							
 Intrusion Prevention Policy Manager Policy Types 	Use this page to define and assign Inspe Inspection Options Policies	ction Option Policies.						
IPS Policies				Ownership and Visibility		Last Updated		
Inspection Options Policies Connection Limiting Policies		Description	Owner Domain	Visibility	Time	Ву	Assign	Editable Here
Firewall Policies	Default Client and Server Inspection	Inspect traffic both from internal endpoints an	/My Company	Owner and child domai	Jan 19, 2016 12	admin	<u>0</u>	No
QoS Policies Exceptions	Default Client Inspection	Inspect traffic from internal endpoints as they	/My Company	Owner and child domai	Jan 19, 2016 12	admin	<u>0</u>	No
▷ Objects	Default Server Inspection	Inspect traffic to exposed Web and mail serve	/My Company	Owner and child domai	Jan 19, 2016 12	admin	<u>0</u>	No
Advanced					New	Сору	Edit	Delete

2. Double-click on a policy for which you want to configure Endpoint Reputation.

To add a new policy, click **New**. Using either action, a page with the policy details appears with the **Properties** tab selected.

3. Update the following fields as applicable:

Option	Definition
Name	Enter a unique name to easily identify the policy.
Description	Optionally describe the policy for other users to identify its purpose.
Owner Domain	Displays the admin domain to which the policy belongs.

Option	Definition
Visibility	When selected, makes the policy available to the corresponding child admin domains. However, the policy cannot be edited or deleted from the child admin domains. From the drop-down list, select the option for the visibility level of the rule object. Available options are Owner and child domains and Owner domain only .
Editable here	The status Yes indicates that the policy is owned by the current admin domain. This field is uneditable.
Statistics	
Lasted Updated	Displays the time stamp when the policy was last modified. This field is uneditable
Last Updated By	Displays the user who last modified the policy. This field is uneditable
Assignments	Indicates the number of inline ports to which the policy is assigned.
Prompt for assignment after save	If you deselect this option you can save the policy now and assign it to the Sensor resources as explained in the following section. If you select this option, the Assignments window opens automatically when you save the policy and you can assign the policy to the required Sensor resources.
Cancel	Reverts to the last saved configuration.

4. Click Next.

The screen shifts to the **Inspection Options** tab. By default, the **Traffic Inspection** tab is selected.

5. Click the **Endpoint Reputation Analysis** tab. Endpoint Reputation Analysis is used to influence SmartBlocking decisions, create connection limiting rules, or to take action when a connection to or from a high-risk endpoint is seen on your network.

Properties Inspection Options					
Use this tab to enable and configure in	spection options	for the interfaces	to which they are	assigned.	
Traffic Inspection Advanced Callb	ack Detection	Endpoint Reput	tation Analysis	Web Server - Heuristic Analysis	Web Server - Denial-of-Service Prevention
Global Threat Intelligence (GTI) end	point reputation	can be used to infl	luence SmartBlock	ing decisions (an attack by a high-r	isk endpoint will increase the likelihood of blo
Note: Endpoint reputation is actually	determined us	ng a combination o	of IP and port. The	same IP address might therefore h	nave a different reputation depending on the p
Endpoint Reputation Analysis:	Outbound only	~			
Use Endpoint Reputation to Influence SmartBlocking:	Enabled	~	(i)		
Exclude Internal Endpoints from GTI Lookups:	Disabled	~			
CIDRs Excluded from Endpoin	t Reputation L	ookups			
Note: The CIDR exclusion list is s	hared by Advan	ced Callback Deter	ction and Endpoint	Reputation Analysis.	
New CIDR:		.0/24	Add		
Protocols Excluded from Endp	ooint Reputatio	on Lookups			
Available Protocols:			✓ Add		
	No Records				

In the **Endpoint Reputation Analysis** tab, configure the following fields:

Option	Definition
Endpoint Reputation Analysis	 Select any of the following options: Disabled Inbound only Outbound only Inbound and Outbound
Use Endpoint Reputation to Influence SmartBlocking	Select Enabled to enable endpoint reputation to Influence SmartBlocking. Select Disabled to disable the option.
Exclude Internal Endpoints from GTI Lookups	Select Enabled to exclude internal endpoints from McAfee GTI Lookups. Select Disabled to disable the option.
CIDRs Excluded from Endpoint	Reputation Lookups
New CIDR	Enter the new CIDR and click Add to add to the CIDR list to be excluded. Click 💌 to remove the CIDR from the list.

Option	Definition
	Note: The CIDR exclusion list is shared by Advanced Callback Detection and Endpoint Reputation Analysis
Protocols Excluded from Endpoint Reputation Lookups	In the drop-down list, select the protocol to be excluded from McAfee GTI Lookups and click Add . The selected protocol is displayed in the field below. Click to remove the protocol from the list.
Prompt for assignment after save	When selected, you are automatically prompted to select the Sensor resources to which you want to assign the policy.

6. Click **Save** to confirm your settings.

Clicking **Cancel** reverts to the last saved configuration.

Configure Endpoint Reputation for an interface

You must enable Endpoint Reputation at the interface level for the Sensor to perform IP address lookups. At the interface level, you can inherit the settings from the admin domain or customize it for the interface.

Task

- 1. In the Manager, select Policy \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Intrusion Prevention \rightarrow Policy Manager.
- Double-click the interface for which you want to configure Endpoint Reputation.
 A <Device Name/Interface> panel appears for the selected interface.
- 3. In the **Inspection Options** section of the **<Device Name/Interface>** panel, select the Endpoint Reputation policy you want from the **Policy** drop down list.

To create a new policy, click the 📩 icon or click the 📝 icon to edit an already assigned policy.

4. Click the 🕂 icon.

The **Properties** tab for a new policy appears.

- Enter the Name and Description, select the Visibility, and click Next. The page shifts to open the Inspection Options tab.
- 6. Click the **Endpoint Reputation Analysis** tab and enable **Endpoint Reputation Analysis** in the required direction.

McAfee Network	k Security Manager Security Manager	
Hormahr) //My Company I Intrusion Prevention Policy Manager I Policy Types D Cocceptions D Dict S D D	Atty Company > Intradio Provention 2 Folicy Manager Properties Inspection Options Use this tab to enable and configure inspection options for the interfaces to which they are asigned. Taffic Inspection (Options) Use this tab to enable and configure inspection options for the interfaces to which they are asigned. Taffic Inspection (Options) Use this tab to enable and configure inspection options for the interfaces to which they are asigned. Taffic Inspection (Options) Use this tab to enable and configure inspection options for the interfaces to which they are asigned. Taffic Inspection (Options) Use this tab to enable and configure inspection options for the interfaces to which they are asigned. Taffic Inspection (Options) Use this tab to enable and configure inspection options for the interfaces to which they are asigned. Taffic Inspection (Stripped) and the interfaces to which they are asigned. Independent Tape (Stripped) Taffic Inspection (Stripped) Table and configure inspection options Disable and option Table and option Table and Outbound and Table and Outbound	?
		Save Cancel

If the outbound connection is enabled, the reputation of the destination IP address is identified. If the inbound direction is enabled, the reputation of the source IP address is identified.

7. Specify the Endpoint Reputation options in the corresponding fields.

F	Properties	Inspection Options								
ı	Jse this tab to	enable and configure	inspection options	for the interfaces	to which they a	ire assig	ned.			
	Traffic Inspe	ction Advanced Cal	Iback Detection	Endpoint Reput	tation Analysi	s We	b Server - Heuristic An	alysis	Web Server - Denial-of-Serv	ice Prevention
	Global Threa	at Intelligence (GTI) er	dpoint reputation	can be used to infl	luence SmartBl	ocking (decisions (an attack by	a high-ri	sk endpoint will increase the I	kelihood of block
	Note: Endpo	pint reputation is actua	lly determined usi	ng a combination o	of IP and port.	The sam	e IP address might the	refore h	ave a different reputation dep	ending on the po
	Endpoint Rep	putation Analysis:	Inbound only	~						
	Use Endpoin Influence Sn	t Reputation to martBlocking:	Enabled	~	(i)					
	Exclude Inte GTI Lookups	ernal Endpoints from s:	Disabled	~						
	CIDRs Ex	ccluded from Endpo	nt Reputation L	ookups						
	Note: The	e CIDR exclusion list is	shared by Advan	ced Callback Deter	ction and Endpo	oint Rep	utation Analysis.			
	New CII	DR:		.0/24		Add				
	Protocol	s Excluded from End	point Reputatio	on Lookups						
	Available	Deste sala			✓ Ad	d				
	Available	Protocols:			Au	u				
			No Records							

Option	Definition
Use Endpoint Reputation to Influence SmartBlocking	Enable to enhance the blocking of an attack by a high-risk host.

Option	Definition
Exclude Internal Endpoints from GTI Lookups	Enable to exclude all the internal hosts from Reputation Lookups based on their IP addresses.
CIDRs Excluded from Endpoint Reputation Lookups	 List of IPv4 networks that are excluded from Reputation Lookup. New CIDR — Click to add an IPv4 network. After you enter the network address and the CIDR notation, click Add. Delete — Hover over the network you want to delete and click the "x" icon to delete the network.
	Note: For the IP addresses specified the exclusion list, the entire flow is marked as exclusion list irrespective of the direction of the flow.
Protocols Excluded from Endpoint Reputation Lookups	 Create the exclusion list for Reputation Lookup based on protocols. When a protocol is added, the Sensor does not perform Reputation Lookup with respect to the corresponding flow. Available Protocols — Select the protocol to be excluded from the drop down list and click Add.
	 Delete — Hover over the protocol you want to delete and click the "x" icon to delete the protocol.
Save	Saves the Endpoint Reputation Lookup configuration.
Cancel	Cancels the configuration process and exits the page.

- 8. Click **Save** in the **<Device Name/Interface>** panel to save the configuration changes.
- 9. Do a configuration update for the corresponding Sensor.

Configure Endpoint Reputation from sub-interface level

You can configure Endpoint Reputation from the sub-interface level. Select **Policy** \rightarrow **<Admin Domain Name>** \rightarrow **Intrusion Prevention** \rightarrow **Policy Manager**. Endpoint Reputation for a sub-interface is configured in the same way as an interface.

Refer to the Configure Endpoint Reputation for an interface section for more information.

Viewing the Global Threat Intelligence alert category details

The following Global Threat Intelligence alert categories are included in the **Alerts** page.

- Dest Country
- Dest Reputation
- Src Country
- Src Reputation

For more information on alerts and monitors, see the McAfee Network Security Platform Manager Interface Reference Guide.

Next generation reports

The Next Generation report option allows you to generate customized reports. You can make selections such as the type of data to base the report on, the format in which you want the data to be presented such as table, bar chart, pie chart, etc. From a list of fields that are applicable for a report, you can select the fields that you wish to display; you can also specify the conditions that must be met to include the information for those fields in the report.

You can then save the query that you have just built for later use. You can also generate the report immediately or schedule it to run automatically by setting options like the period to be considered for displaying data, report output format etc.

Next Generation reports can be generated from **Analysis** \rightarrow **Event Reporting** in the Manager.

When you select the **Next Generation Reports** in the Manager, the **Next Generation Reports** page displays the **Saved Reports** on the left pane by default.

Next generation reports details

The following reports are included in the Next Generation Reports page under Event Reporting menu.

- Default Attack Source Reputation Summary
- Default Top Attack Destinations
- Default Top Attack Sources
- Default Top 10 Attack Source Countries
- Default Telemetry (NSP)
- Default Telemetry (McAfee)

You can customize and create user defined reports with a choice of data source, presentation and filter by selecting **New** in the **Next Generation Reports** page.

For more details, see the McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide.

How to view Telemetry report

The GTI report is a report that shows all the details that will be sent to McAfee Labs. Viewing this report helps you in understanding the list of information sent by you. The report generates a complete information on **Alert Data Details**, **IP Exclusion List, Alert Data Summary, General Setup, Feature Usage, System Faults**, and **Technical Contact Information**.

To view the GTI Report, do the following:

1. In the Manager, go to Analysis \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Even Reporting \rightarrow Next Generation Reports.

The Next Generation Reports page is displayed.

2. Select Default - Telemetry (NSP) report and click Run.

The Run Report page is displayed.

3. Select the Date Options and Report Format and click Run.

🗹 Note

For **HTML** and **PDF** options, the report is displayed in the Manager. For **Save as CSV** and **Save as HTML**, use the **File Download** option to save the report.

The **Telemetry Report** is displayed.

	E Print Ok
elemetry	
lert Data Details	
The following attributes are being sent in real-time for each ale	ert seen:
 Application Name Attack Name Attack Name Attack Name Attack Times Name Attacker IP Address Attacker IP Address Attacker OS Attacker OS Callback alert information Category Count Direction of Attack For correlated alerts: Diggered component attacks and their constraints Direction of Attack For correlated alerts: Diggered component attacks and their constraints For correlated alerts: Diggered component attacks and their constraints For correlated alerts: Diggered component attacks and their constraints For ATT attacks: File name, size, type, MDS hash, UUID and ministrates NesP Attack ID Protocol Signature ID Signature ID Signature ID Target IP Address Target OS Type Type URI 	d, confidence, weight and the alware confidence
P Exclusion List	
Data for endpoints matching the following CIDR blocks will not	

Network Security Platform-GTI integration for connection limiting policies

Connection Limiting policies consist of a set of rules that enable the Sensors to limit the number of connections a host can establish or a connection rate.

The Sensor provides the ability to define threshold values to limit number of connections (three-way handshakes for TCP) a host can establish. The number of connections or the connection rate that is less than or equal to the defined threshold value is allowed, whereas the same exceeding the value is dropped. This helps in minimizing the connection-based DoS attacks on server.

Connection Limiting rules are of two types:

- Protocol-based
- GTI-based

Only GTI-based rules are applicable for the integration of this technology with IP Reputation. These rules are defined for traffic to/from external hosts based on reputation and geo-location of the external hosts.

When GTI is enabled and Connection Limiting rules are configured, you can block the malicious inbound connections. In this scenario, if Sensor is deployed in front of the Web server, GTI along with Connection Limiting rules limit access to their servers (DOS prevention).

These defined Connection Limiting policies can also be assigned at the interface and sub-interface levels.

Refer McAfee® Network Security Platform Product Guide for more information.

Network Security Platform-GTI integration for File Reputation

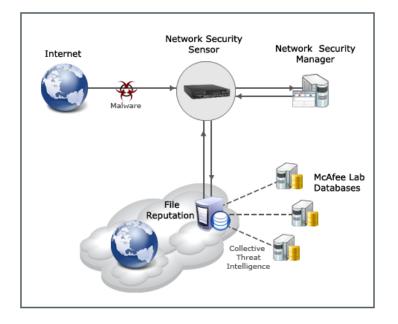
Network Security Platform integrates with File Reputation (formerly Artemis technology), which is a cloud-based service that provides real-time protection from malicious file downloads.

Network Security Platform also provides users the option to upload custom fingerprints to the Manager which can be used for File Reputation instead of GTI lookups or to complement them.

Network Security Platform provides the following functionalities through this enhanced integration:

- Response actions for detected malware (for example, raise alerts, send a TCP reset or block the file)
- Enabling Network Security Platform administrators to upload custom fingerprints for File Reputation
- · Reports on File Reputation detection, and other related statistical data

Following diagram gives an overview of Network Security Platform-File Reputation integration.



Integration between Network Security Platform and File Reputation

When a file download is detected over HTTP traffic, the file type is checked. If the file type matches the list of the file types for which the malware is checked, then, the Sensor creates a fingerprint (MD5 hash value) of the file, embeds the fingerprint in a standard DNS request, and sends it to GTI cloud server. The list of file types to be checked for GTI fingerprints is defined in the signature set (read-only). You can enable or disable GTI fingerprints scanning for different supported file types in the malware policy

The cloud server compares the fingerprint against the threat database maintained by McAfee Labs. If the fingerprint is identified as a known malware, the cloud server notifies the Sensor and it enforces a response action for the malware. Note that the alerts for the malware can be viewed in Attack Log.

🗹 Note

The fingerprint is a short-bit string (MD5 hash value) that uniquely identifies the original file.

Terminologies

Sensitivity Level

Malware dirtiness level is the level of malicious content in the malware fingerprint. A very high dirtiness level indicates a known malware.

Sensitivity level indicates the level to which Network Security Platform needs to be sensitive to the malware dirtiness level contained in the responses from File Reputation.

Manager provides five different values for Sensitivity Level - Very Low, Low, Medium, High, Very High. By default, the Sensitivity Level is Very Low.

When you set the Sensitivity Level as Very Low (the default), the Sensor only responds to the File Reputation fingerprints with a high dirtiness level (known malware). Response action from the Sensor can be alert, block, or both as described earlier.

Detection Type

Defines the type of detection that is required for the malware. You can detect malware using File Reputation alone, or the Custom fingerprints detection, or both. When you enable both File Reputation detection type and Custom detection type, the latter takes precedence over the former.

Primary and Secondary DNS Server IP Address

IP address information related to the local Primary and Secondary DNS Servers. The Sensor embeds the MD5 hash value of the file in a DNS Request. The local DNS Servers forward the DNS Requests from the Sensor to File Reputation server. File Reputation server sends back DNS Responses (which contain information such as Malware dirtiness level) to the Sensor through the local DNS Server.

Benefits of File Reputation

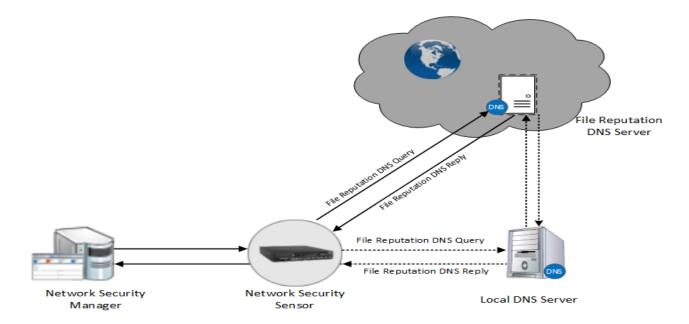
The key benefits of File Reputation include:

- Compresses the threat protection time period from days to milliseconds.
- Increases malware detection rates.
- Reduces downtime and remediation costs associated with malware attacks.

Network Security Platform-File Reputation integration in detail

Following diagram shows the communications between Sensor, Manager and File Reputation DNS Server.





File Reputation uses the Internet DNS mechanism to communicate and cache information related to the file downloads in the user systems.

As mentioned earlier, the Sensor detects file downloads, and classifies them as suspicious as defined in the protocol specification. For example, HTTP downloads of type .exe, .dll, .scr and a maximum file size of 1 MB (for signature set 7.5.13.7 and lower) and 4 MB (for signature set 7.5.14.25 and higher) are classified as "suspicious".

The Sensor creates a fingerprint (MD5 hash value) of the file embeds the fingerprint in a standard DNS Request and sends it to File Reputation DNS server. The Sensor exchanges DNS queries and responses directly with the File Reputation DNS Server or through configured local DNS Servers (Primary and Secondary).

🗹 Note

Ensure that your firewall is configured so that the Sensor can send the request and receive the response from the File Reputation DNS server.

🗹 Note

The Primary and Secondary local DNS servers can be configured in the Manager from the **Devices** tab in **Name Resolution** settings. Depending on the Sensor management port configurations, you can set IPv4 or IPv6 local DNS servers. The DNS Server configurations in the Manager are pushed to the Sensor during the configuration update.

The Sensor management port can handle multiple DNS requests and responses. File Reputation DNS Queries (which are UDP DNS Requests) are sent out from the Management port of the Sensor to the File Reputation DNS Server directly or using local DNS server. File Reputation replies back or using the local DNS Server. File Reputation DNS responses are encoded in the standard DNS responses.

Response actions for File Reputation alerts are now part of the Policy and one can configure response actions such as block/reset in Policy Editor or in Attack Log for the attack for Malware attacks.

The Sensor takes a response action (alert/block or both) to the file as per the Response Action. If the Response Action is set to Alert, the alerts are raised in the Attack Log, but the file download is not blocked.

Response actions are not persisted after Sensor reboot as this is part of the policy now. Only DNS Server, Sensitivity level and time out are persisted after reboot.

If the Response Action is set to Alert and Block, the alerts are raised in the Attack Log, and the file download is blocked.

The alerts raised in Attack Log display the MD5 hash value of the malware, and the URL from where the malware was downloaded.

You can enable three types of detection in the Manager: File Reputation only, Custom, or both.

Custom fingerprint detection takes precedence over File Reputation detection type.

Also note that IPS attack detection takes precedence over User-defined fingerprint detection in the Sensor. That is, when the traffic contains both IPS attack and malware content detected by Network Security Platform-File Reputation integration, the attack is detected as IPS attack, and not as a malware attack. The blocking of the attack takes place as per IPS attack definition.

🗹 Note

The DNS Server IP addresses, custom Response Action and Detection type settings are persisted even after a Sensor reboot. But the entries are cleared if you execute a resetconfig command on the Sensor.

Note that malicious files are detected and responded with the Network Security Platform-File Reputation integration for traffic types such as fragmented, segmented or tunneled traffic. Files are also detected with different HTTP versions (for example 1.0, 1.1 etc) of the browser.

File Reputation in different Sensor modes

In this integration, the Sensor provides malware detection in all the operating modes, that is, inline, tap, and SPAN. In the inline mode, malware is detected in both Inline fail-open and Inline fail-closed modes.

Network Security Platform-File Reputation integration in a Manager Disaster Recovery (MDR) setup

Once the MDR is created, and all the Sensor s have established trust with both Primary and Secondary Managers, same malware configuration is available in Secondary (Standby) Manager.

When there is a switchover, and the Secondary Manager becomes active, it will continue the File Reputation scanning function as before. Also, if the Primary Manager switches back to the active mode as before, the changes made in the Secondary are retrieved and updated correctly in the Primary Manager.

The Sensor File Reputation Alerts are sent to both Primary and Secondary Managers.

File Reputation integration configurations in the Manager

Following sections explain how you can set the Network Security Platform-File Reputation integration configurations in the Manager.

GTI fingerprints

The Sensor creates a fingerprint (MD5 hash value) of the file that is seen as potentially malicious, embeds the fingerprint in a standard DNS request, and sends it to GTI cloud server. The cloud server compares the fingerprint against the threat database maintained by McAfee Labs. If the fingerprint is identified as a known malware, the cloud server notifies from the Sensor and it enforces a response action for the malware. Note that the details of the malware can be viewed from the Attack Log.

Manage allow and block lists

You can add the MD5 hash values of files to the block list or allow list and import the resulting fingerprints into Network Security Platform. The Sensor scans the specified file types for potential malware and compares it with blocked and allowed hashes. If a blocked match is found, it enforces a response action.

Add hash values to the allow list

You can add a list of allowed fingerprints (MD5 hashes) for files you want exempted from malware analysis when found in HTTP or SMTP downloads.

Task

Select Policy → <Admin Domain Name> → Intrusion Prevention → Exceptions → File Hashes.
 You can view the current list of allowed hashes in the Allowed Hashes tab of the File Hashes page.

Allowed hashes

this p	page to manage allow and block lists	of MD5 file hashes.				
e: Th	e maximum number of hashes suppo	rted (allowed and blocked combined) is 99,000.			
Has	hes					
ock L	ist Allow List					
les th	nat match the below list of hashes will	be excluded from advanced malwar	e inspection.		Search	C
	File Hash ▲	File Name	Last Updated	Last Updated		
	File Hash A	File Name	Time	Ву	Comment	
1	0386ff59d0f5c1cde453a378035	telephon.cpl	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020	Administrator	desc	
2	0a614929df1ea09534403ab02	Python_Basics_and_MySQLD	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020	Administrator	desc	
3	152e5cedb1eb8c69ddd578b85	Helpdesk_Tax_Filing_Form.xls	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020	Administrator	desc	
4	1bd0b835db0f2535b10417df50	ArtemisTest.zip	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020	Administrator	desc	
5	1bf588ba89e79829ad5d095e1	sis.sys	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020	Administrator	desc	
6	2a480eff5df8c5a757add35aead	NSAT_PPT_Template_v1.pptx	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020	Administrator	desc	
7	300a2c5cbddb9131d1818dbc4	Artemis_and_CustomFP_Test	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020	Administrator	desc	
8	31e6002b21c489fbbdb0f88ddc	hex-editor-setup.exe	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020	Administrator	desc	
9	35426e5fb884ca8a6b02135aa4	ssText3d.scr	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020	Administrator	desc	

The following table describes the details displayed in the **Allowed Hashes** tab.

Format	Description
File Hash	Specifies the file hash. The File Hash will be in the MD5 format.
File Name	Specifies the name of the file along with the file extension.
Last Updated	 Displays the following: Time: Specifies the time stamp of the imported allow list. By: Specifies the user who imported the allow list.
Comment	Any comments about the list.

- 2. Click **Import** to import a file containing the hash values.
- 3. Click Browse to locate an XML or CSV file that contains the list of hashes that you want to import.
- 4. Click Import.

The file to be imported should be in the following CSV format.

<Name of the file with extension (like .exe, .com)>,<File size>,<Hash type>,<File hash>,<Description>

🗹 Note

The file hash should be in the MD5 format.

Example file format: Application.exe, 1024000, MD5, 30a4edd18db6dd6aaa20e3da93c5f425, textual description. Also note that if you are importing multiple files, each file has to be in a new line.

The following is a sample for a CSV file with multiple file hashes.

```
1 ,2,MD5,54c652555dd2dab3c87e1b92c8302f1e
2 optional filename,1,MD5,7331df41dfb25c55271c1f111efc224e
3 ,1,MD5,96a65cad713f529c13d74802c89d7188,optional comment
```

The following table describes the details of the files to be imported in the CSV or XML format.

Format	Description
<name file="" of="" the="" with<br="">extension (like .exe, .com)></name>	Specifies the name of the file to be imported, along with the file extension. This is an optional value.
<file size=""></file>	Specifies the size of the file to be imported. The file size should be a valid integer.
	Note: File size value is mandatory. It is used by the Sensor as a secondary matching criterion when the same hash has been added to both the block list and allow list.
	Note: If the file size is unknown, you can add a placeholder value like 1 to the CSV file as this value is mandatory.
<hash type=""></hash>	Specifies the format of the hash. The supported file hash type is the MD5 format.
<file hash=""></file>	Specifies the hash for the file to be imported.
<description></description>	Specifies the description of the file to be imported. This is an optional value.

2 | Integration with McAfee Global Threat Intelligence

🗹 Note

If you are importing using CSV, you can import the same file hash to both allow list and block list.

5. To add a single file hash to the allowed hashes, click

Click Save after entering the values in File Hash, File Name, and Comment. The Comment field is optional.

🗹 Note

The **File Hash** should be a 32 digit hexadecimal value.

Add a single allow list file hash value

/My Com	ipany > Intrusion Preve	ntion > Exceptions > File Hashes	5			?
Use this p	bage to manage allow and	block lists of MD5 file hashes.				
Note: Th	e maximum number of has	shes supported (allowed and blocked	l combined) is 99,000.			
File Has	hes					
Block L	ist Allow List					
Files th		hashes will be excluded from advance	ced Search C		Hash Details	×
	File Hash 🔺	File Name	Last Updated		File Hash:	0a614929df1ea09534403ab02a7e4
		The nume	Time		File Name:	Python_Basics_and_MySQLDB.pdf
1	0386ff59d0f5c1cde4	telephon.cpl	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020	^	Comment:	desc
2	0a614929df1ea0953	Python_Basics_and_MySQLD	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020			
3	152e5cedb1eb8c69d	Helpdesk_Tax_Filing_Form.xls	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020			
4	1bd0b835db0f2535b	ArtemisTest.zip	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020			
5	1bf588ba89e79829a	sis.sys	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020		Last Updated:	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020 (Administrator)
6	2a480eff5df8c5a757	NSAT_PPT_Template_v1.pptx	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020			(
7	300a2c5cbddb9131d	Artemis_and_CustomFP_Test	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020			
8	31e6002b21c489fbb	hex-editor-setup.exe	Dec 23 19:41:58 2020	~		
<			>			
+ -	Save as CSV	Other Actions 🔹	18 file hashes	s		Save

- 6. To export the allowed hashes from the Manager to a local system, click **Other Actions** \rightarrow **Export All**.
- 7. To delete specific entries from the allow list, select them by holding the *Shift* or *Ctrl* key and clicking on the required rows.

Then click

The deleted hashes are now neither in the allow list nor in the block list.

- 8. To remove all the entries, select **Other Actions** \rightarrow **Delete All**.
- 9. To move specific entries to the block list, select the entries and then select **Other Actions** \rightarrow **Move to Block list**.
 - A manual signature set push is not required each time the allow list or the block list is updated. The Manager updates the Sensor dynamically with the modified entries in the allow list or block list, at an interval of 5 minutes. These updates occur in bulk (the complete list of entries) or increments (added/deleted entries). To view the status of these updates, use the <u>show ab stats</u> command. For more information, see the <u>McAfee Network Security Platform</u> *Product Guide*.
 - You can configure a maximum of 99,000 entries (allowed and blocked).

Add hash values to the block list

You can add MD5 hash values of files to treat as malicious when found in HTTP and SMTP downloads. If a file's hash matches a hash value in the block list, the Sensor treats the file as malicious of *very high* severity.

Task

 Select Policy → <Admin Domain Name> → Intrusion Prevention → Exceptions → File Hashes. In the Blocked Hashes tab, you can add the hash values to be blocked, manage the file types to be checked for the blocked hashes, and view the maximum file size scanned.

Blocked hashes

	page to manage allow and block lists of		N			
	e maximum number of hashes suppor	rted (allowed and blocked combined) is 99,000.	v		
Has	ines					
ock	List Allow List					
es th	nat match the below list of hashes will	trigger a file block list event.			Search	C
	File Hash ▲	File Name	Last Updated	Last Updated		
	riie riasii –	rile Name	Time	Ву	Comment	
1	0386ff59d0f5c1cde453a378035	telephon.cpl	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	
2	075c8160789eb0829488a4fc9b	collectmail_notwo0a.pdf	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	description	
3	0a614929df1ea09534403ab02	Python_Basics_and_MySQLD	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	
4	0b237b533bd87632c9ccac9b64	notepad.ex	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	
5	152e5cedb1eb8c69ddd578b85	Helpdesk_Tax_Filing_Form.xls	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	
6	1bb69e3f010c80ad282196c31f	applwizard.jar	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	
7	1bd0b835db0f2535b10417df50	ArtemisTest.zip	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	
8	1bf588ba89e79829ad5d095e1	sis.sys	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	
9	2a480eff5df8c5a757add35aead	NSAT PPT Template v1.pptx	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	

The following table describes the details displayed in the **Blocked Hashes** tab.

Format	Description
File Hash	Specifies the file hash. The File Hash will be in the MD5 format.
File Name	Specifies the name of the file along with the file extension.
Last Updated	 Displays the following: Time: Specifies the time stamp of the imported block list file hash. By: Specifies the user who imported the block list file hash.

Format	Description
Comment	Any comments about the list.

- 2. Click **Import** to import a file containing the hash values.
- 3. Click **Browse** to locate the CSV file that contains the list of hashes that you want to import.
- 4. Click Import.

The file to be imported should be in the following CSV format.

<Name of the file with extension (like .exe, .com)>,<File size>,<Hash type>,<File hash>,<Description>

Example file format: Application.exe, 1024000, MD5, 30a4edd18db6dd6aaa20e3da93c5f425, textual description. Also note that if you are importing multiple files, each file has to be in a new line.

The following is a sample for a CSV file with multiple file hashes.

1 ,2,MD5,54c652555dd2dab3c87e1b92c8302f1e
2 optional filename,1,MD5,7331df41dfb25c55271c1f111efc224e
3 ,1,MD5,96a65cad713f529c13d74802c89d7188,optional comment

The following table describes the details of the files to be imported in the CSV or XML format.

Format	Description
<name file="" of="" the="" with<br="">extension (like .exe, .com)></name>	Specifies the name of the file to be imported, along with the file extension. This is an optional value.
<file size=""></file>	Specifies the size of the file to be imported. The file size should be a valid integer.
	Note: File size value is mandatory. It is used by the Sensor as a secondary matching criterion when the same hash has been added to both the block list and allow list.

Format	Description
	Note: If the file size is unknown, you can add a placeholder value like 1 to the CSV file as this value is mandatory.
<hash type=""></hash>	Specifies the format of the hash. The supported file hash type is the MD5 format.
<file hash=""></file>	Specifies the hash for the file to be imported.
<description></description>	Specifies the description of the file to be imported. This is an optional value.
*	

🗹 Note

If you are importing using CSV, you can import the same file hash to both allow list and block list.

5. To add a single domain to the blocked hashes, click

Click **Save** after entering the values in **File Hash**, **File Name**, and **Comment**. The **Comment** field is optional.

🗹 Note

The **File Hash** should be a 32 digit hexadecimal value.

Add a single block list file hash value

this	page to manage allow and block lists o	of MD5 file hashes.				
te: Th	e maximum number of hashes suppor	ted (allowed and blocked combined) is 99,000.	~		
e Has	hes					
lock	List Allow List					
iles th	at match the below list of hashes will	trigger a file block list event.			Search	
	ette tradició	File Name	Last Updated		0	
File Hash 🔺		File Name	Time By		Comment	
1	0386ff59d0f5c1cde453a378035	telephon.cpl	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	
2	075c8160789eb0829488a4fc9b	collectmail_notwo0a.pdf	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	description	
3	0a614929df1ea09534403ab02	Python_Basics_and_MySQLD	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	
4	0b237b533bd87632c9ccac9b64	notepad.ex	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	
5	152e5cedb1eb8c69ddd578b85	Helpdesk_Tax_Filing_Form.xls	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	
6	1bb69e3f010c80ad282196c31f	applwizard.jar	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	
7	1bd0b835db0f2535b10417df50	ArtemisTest.zip	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	
8	1bf588ba89e79829ad5d095e1	sis.sys	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	
9	2a480eff5df8c5a757add35aead	NSAT_PPT_Template_v1.pptx	Dec 23 18:31:16 2020	Administrator	desc	

6. To export the blocked hashes from the Manager to a local system, click **Other Actions** \rightarrow **Export All**.

7. To delete specific entries from the block list, select them by holding the *Shift* or *Ctrl* key and clicking on the required rows. Then click

The deleted hashes are now neither in the allow list nor in the block list.

- 8. To remove all the entries, select **Other Actions** \rightarrow **Delete All**.
- 9. To move specific entries to the allow list, select the entries and then select **Other Actions** \rightarrow **Move to Allow list**.

• A manual signature set push is not required each time the allow list or the block list is updated. The Manager updates the Sensor dynamically with the modified entries in the allow list or block list, at an interval of 5 minutes. These updates occur in bulk (the complete list of entries) or increments (added/deleted entries). To view the status of these updates, use the show ab stats command. For more information, see the *McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide*.

• You can configure a maximum of 99,000 entries (allowed and blocked).

Configure File Reputation for Advanced Malware Detection

While creating an Advanced Malware policy for your network, you can set **Allow and Block Lists** and **GTI File Reputation** as the malware engines to scan the traffic across your network. For more information, see *McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide*.

Add an Advanced Malware policy

You configure the anti-malware options in an Advanced Malware policy and then assign it to the required Sensor monitoring resources such as ports, interfaces, and subinterfaces. You must do a configuration and signature set update for any changes in the policy to take effect.

Task

- 1. Select **Policy** and then select the required admin domain from the **Domain** drop-down list.
- 2. Select Intrusion Prevention \rightarrow Policy Types \rightarrow Advanced Malware Policies.
- 3. Click New.

The Advanced Malware Policy page for a new policy opens.

Update the properties of the Advanced Malware policy

Properties			$\hat{}$
Name:	Advanced Malware Policy Name	Traffic to Inspect	
Description:		☑ HTTP	
Owner:	/My Company	FTP	
Visible to Child Admin Domains?		SMTP	

4. Update the following properties.

Field name	Description
Name	Name of the policy.
Description	Description of the policy.
Owner	Name of the admin domain to which the policy belongs.
Visible to Child Admin Domains?	Specifies whether the policy is applicable to all child admin domains.
Traffic to Inspect	Protocols over which advanced malware scanning is performed. The supported protocols are HTTP, FTP, and SMTP.
	Note: Enable HTTP Response scanning to scan files in the HTTP data stream.
	Note: FTP malware detection overrides the accelerate-ftp feature even if it is enabled. For more information on the accelerate-ftp CLI command, see <i>McAfee Network Security Platform Sensor Reference Guide</i> .

5. Update the **Scanning Options**.

Update the scanning options of the Advanced Malware policy

Scanning Options												
Use the options below to d probability that a file is ma Note: Name resolution mus device software versions. (Tip: Files saved to the Mar	licious. For exa t be enabled o 5 MB is the lin	ample, you may wa on devices on whic nit in some cases.)	to send exec th the <i>GTI File Re</i> Please consult	utables through eputation, Gatew the online help fo	all applicable engir <i>ay Anti-Mawlare c</i> or details.	nes, be alerted on or <i>McAfee Cloud</i> er	<i>Medium</i> (or ab ngine will be us	oove) confidence, ed, and not all file	and block on <i>High</i> size limits below a	(or above) confide	ence.	5
Maximum Malware Engines Action Thresholds							ds					
File Type	File Size (KB) Scanned	Allow and Block Lists	TIE / GTI File Reputation	NSP Analysis	Gateway Anti-Malware	Advanced Threat Defense	McAfee Cloud	Alert	Block	Send TCP Reset	Add to Block List	Save File
Executables	5120		V		V	v		High	High	High	Disabled	Disabled
MS Office Files	1024			v	V			High	High	High	Disabled	Disabled
PDF Files	1024		v	v	V			High	High	High	Disabled	Disabled
Compressed Files	5120	V						High	High	High	Disabled	Disabled
Android Application P	2048	V	v			v	V	High	High	High	Disabled	Disabled
Java Archives	2048	V	V					High	High	High	Disabled	Disabled
Flash Files	2048	v	v	v	v	v		High	High	High	Disabled	Disabled
<	C								>			

🗹 Note

Name resolution must be enabled on devices which will be using the GTI File Reputation malware engine.

Field name	Description
File Type	The file types to be scanned. For information about the supported file types, refer the table <i>Advanced malware file extension support</i> below.
Maximum File Size (KB) Scanned	 This the maximum size currently supported for the corresponding file type. Files that exceed the specified size are not analyzed for malware by any of the engines, including the block and allow lists. The default values are displayed in the Default Malware Policy as well as when you create a policy. The default values are the optimum sizes recommended by McAfee Labs based on their research on malware. You can set the maximum file size value up to 25 MB for all file types. However, the NSP Analysis engine and McAfee Cloud engine have a file-size limit. The limits for each Sensor model are as follows: NS-series Sensors - 50 MB M-series Sensors - 5 MB Virtual IPS Sensors - 5 MB

Field name	Description
	Note: McAfee recommends that for any file type, you do not set a value more than 5 MB as the maximum file size as this might affect the Sensor's performance.
Malware Engines	The Malware engines to scan the selected file type. If you select Gateway Anti-Malware for a File Type , you must either use an NS-series Sensor running Sensor software version 9.1 or above or NTBA.
	For Advanced Threat Defense to work, you must integrate the corresponding Sensors with McAfe Advanced Threat Defense. See the chapter, <i>Integration with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense</i> , in the <i>McAfee Network Security Platform Integration Guide</i> for more information.
Action Thresholds	Specifies the type of response to be made for the attack. The types of responses are:
Thresholds	 Alert— Alerts are raised in Attack Log. Block— This action blocks packets for detected malware. Thus preventing the malicious file from reaching the host.
	 The first step towards prevention is typically to block attacks that have a high severity level. When you know which attacks you want to block, you can configure your policy to perform the drop attack packets response for those attacks. If not configured in the policy, the Attack Log allows yo to update the policy to block traffic. Send TCP Reset— Disconnects a TCP connection at the source, destination, or both ends of th transmission. Thus preventing the malicious file from reaching the host.
	Note: This response may not work effectively with SPAN and tap deployments.
	• Add to Block List — If any of the engines report the submitted file to be malicious, then the Manager adds the file's MD5 hash to the block list in its database. To be added to this list, the file severity must be the same or more than what you specify in this field. For example, if you specify <i>high</i> as the criteria, then files of severity <i>high</i> and <i>very high</i> are added to the block list. Within the next 5 minutes, the Manager adds this file to the local block list of all the Sensors that it manages
	Note: The TIE/GTI File Reputation engine does not support Add to Block List response action. You can manually add the desired malware file's MD5 hash to the block list from the

Field name	Description
	• Save File — One of the response actions specified is the ability to archive the file in a file store based on the Advanced Malware policy. The files that are selected based on this configuration are forwarded to Manager.
	 For files greater than 5 MB, only the first 5 MB is available as the saved file. To prevent the Manager's disk from getting frequently filled up, use the Save File feature sparingly. The Sensor's simultaneous file scan capacity is reduced if the Save File option is enabled. See the table in this section for the details.

Advanced malware file extension support

File Type	НТТР	SMTP	FTP
Executebales			
	.acm	.acm	.acm
	.ax	.ax	.ax
	.com	.com	.com
	.cpl	.cpl	.cpl
	.dll	.dll	.dll
	.drv	.drv	.drv
	.exe	.exe	.exe
	.fon	.fon	.fon
	.ocx	.ocx	.ocx
	.olb	.olb	.olb
	.pif	.pif	.pif
	.qts	.qts	.qts
	.qtx	.qtx	.qtx
	.scr	.scr	.scr
	.sys	.sys	.sys
	.vbx	.vbx	.vbx
	.vxd	.vxd	.vxd

File Type	НТТР	SMTP	FTP
MS Office Files	.doc	.doc	.doc
	.docx	.docx	.docx
	.ppt	.ppt	.ppt
	.pptx	.pptx	.pptx
	.rtf	.rtf	
	.xls	.xls	.xls
	.xlsx	.xlsx	.xlsx
PDF Files	.fdf	.fdf	.fdf
	.pdf	.pdf	.pdf
	.xdp	.xdp	
Compressed Files	.7z	.7z	
	.pkzip	.pkzip	.pkzip
	.rar	.rar	.rar
	.zip	.zip	.zip
Android Application Packages	.apk		.apk
Java Archive	.jar	.jar	.jar
Flash Files	.swf	.swf	

🗹 Note

McAfee might enhance the supported file types over time. The file types are subject to change with new signature sets. The Sensor cannot extract .zip, .jar, .apk and office open xml files if correct file extension is not present, as they share the same magic number 50 4B 03 04(PK).

Each file type is scanned by a Malware engine. Multiple malware engines can be selected to scan various file types. The Malware engines return a confidence level. Based on the confidence level, the following action thresholds can be set. The confidence levels supported are: Very low, low, medium, high, very high. The Malware Engines supported per file type are:

File Type	TIE/GTI File Reputation	Allow and Block Lists	NSP Analysis	Gateway Anti- Malware	Advanced Threat Defense	McAfee Cloud
Executables	x	x		x	x	x
MS Office Files	x	x		x	x	
PDF Files	x	x	x	x	x	x
Compressed Files	x	x		x	x	
Android Application Package	x	X		x	x	x
Java Archive	x	x		x	x	
Flash Files	x	х	x	x	x	

The maximum simultaneous file scan capacity per Sensor model is as follows.

Sensor	Maximum simultaneous file scan capacity with file save	Maximum simultaneous file scan capacity without file save
NS9500 stack - 100 Gbps throughput	1,000	1,024
NS9500 stack - 60 Gbps throughput	1,000	1,024
NS9500 stack - 40 Gbps throughput	1,000	1,024
NS9500 standalone - 30 Gbps throughput	1,000	1,024

Sensor	Maximum simultaneous file scan capacity with file save	Maximum simultaneous file scan capacity without file save
NS9500 standalone - 20 Gbps throughput	1,000	1,024
NS9500 standalone - 10 Gbps throughput	1,000	1,024
NS9300, NS9200, NS9100	50	4,094
NS7350, NS7250, NS7150	50	4,094
NS7300, NS7200, NS7100	50	4,094
NS5200, NS5100	32	1,024
NS3500 - 200 Mbps throughput	16	255
NS3500 - 100 Mbps throughput	16	255
NS3200, NS3100	16	255
IPS-VM600	32	1,024
M-8000, M-6050, M-4050, M-3050, M-8030, M-6030, M-4030	50	1,024
M-2950, M-2850, M-3030	32	1,024
M-1450, M-1250	16	255

6. To assign the Advanced Malware Policy to the available interfaces and direction (Inbound, Outbound), select **Prompt for assignment after save**.

Assign Interfaces

AllEngines_With_AlertOnly / Assignments						
Search Available Interfaces:]					
Available Interfaces 🔺	Current Policy			Selected Interfaces (Policy Group) 🔺		
/My Company/M4050/1A-1B/Inbound						
/My Company/M4050/1A-1B/Outbound						
/My Company/M4050/2A-2B/Inbound			+			
/My Company/M4050/2A-2B/Outbound						
/My Company/M4050/3A-3B/Inbound			+			
/My Company/M4050/3A-3B/Outbound						
		•				
Objects: 58				Objects: 0		
						Reset
					Save	Cancel

- 7. Select the required interface from the **Available Interfaces** column and add it to the **Selected Interfaces (Policy Group)** column.
- 8. Click Save.

You are directed to the new policy window.

View File Reputation details in Attack Log

You can view the details of the malware in the Attack Log. Double-click on the malware alert detected by Global Threat Intelligence File Reputation. The alert details are displayed with details such as MD5 hash value of the malware, URL from where the malware was downloaded, detection mechanism.

File Reputation details in Attack Log

MALWARE: Malicious	s File Detected by GAM
Export -	C
Summary Details	Description
Malware File	*
File Name:	/Artemis-VeryLow-Troj.exe
File Hash:	f22f09a8c4c6cbac02a4ec2c2dae38ca Allow Block
Malware Name:	ArtemisITrojan
Malware Confidence:	Very High
Engine:	(i) Gateway Anti-Malware
Size (bytes):	1024
Description:	
CVE ID:	
Layer 7	*
HTTP Response Content Type:	application/octet-stream
HTTP Server Type:	Apache/2.4.16 (Fedora) OpenSSL/1.0.1k-fips Last-Modified: Fri 20 Feb 2015 13:49:43 GMT
HTTP Return Code:	200
HTTP Host:	1.1.1.10
HTTP URI:	/Artemis-VeryLow-Troj.exe
HTTP User-Agent:	Wget/1.11.4
HTTP Request Method:	GET

How to view malware statistics per Sensor

You can view the malware statistics per Sensor by doing the following steps.

Task

- 1. Navigate to **Devices** \rightarrow **<Admin Domain Name>** \rightarrow **Devices** \rightarrow **<Device Name>** \rightarrow **Troubleshooting** \rightarrow **Traffic Statistics**.
- 2. Click the **Advanced Malware Analysis** tab.

You can view the traffic statistics for malware statistics either By Malware Engine or By File Type.

Malware traffic statistics

в	y File Type 💌			- 11					(
		Executables	MS Office Files	PDF Files	Flash Files	Compressed Files	Android Application Packages	Java Archives	
	Files Processed	10	7	2	0	1	0	0	

3. Click the refresh icon to view the updated malware statistics.

To view the number of malware alerts detected by Network Security Platform-File Reputation integration, use the status command. For more information on these commands, see *McAfee Network Security Platform Sensor Reference Guide*.

CLI commands for Network Security Platform - File Reputation integration

The Sensor CLI command related to Network Security Platform-File Reputation integration are:

• show gti config: Displays the GTI server configuration information.

For more information on these command see, McAfee Network Security Platform Sensor Reference Guide.

Network Security Platform-File Reputation integration is supported on M-series, NS-series, and Virtual IPS Sensors.

Limitations

• When the Sensor is in the Layer 2 mode (L2 mode), there is no detection of malware content as per the Network Security Platform-GTI File Reputation integration.

Troubleshooting

Clearing File Reputation counters

For clearing the File Reputation counters, use the clrstat command.

For more information on CLI commands, see McAfee Network Security Platform Sensor Reference Guide.

System event for DNS error

If there is an incorrect File Reputation DNS configuration, the File Reputation DNS Error is displayed.

Disable HTTP Response Scanning to improve performance of File Reputation

In Network Security Platform 8.1 and above HTTP Response Scanning is not required for File Reputation to work. In fact, to improve the performance of File Reputation, disable HTTP Response Scanning on the corresponding port or port-pair.

Integration with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense

Over the years, malware has evolved into a sophisticated tool for malicious activities such as stealing valuable information, accessing your computer resources without your knowledge, and for disrupting business operations. At the same time, technological advancement provides limitless options to deliver malicious files to unsuspecting users. Hundreds of thousands of new malware variants every day make the job of malware detection even more complex. Traditional anti-malware techniques are no longer sufficient to protect your network.

McAfee's response to this challenge is the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense solution. This is an on-premise appliance that facilitates detection and prevention of malware. McAfee Advanced Threat Defense provides protection from known, near-zero day, and zero-day malware without compromising on the quality of service to your network users.

The McAfee Advanced Threat Defense solution primarily consists of the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance and its preinstalled software. The McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance is available in two models. The low-end model is the ATD-3000. The high-end model is the ATD-6000. You can deploy McAfee Advanced Threat Defense as a stand-alone appliance or integrate it with some of the other McAfee products. For complete information on McAfee Advanced Threat Defense, see the *McAfee Advanced Threat Defense Product Guide*.

McAfee Advanced Threat Defense has the added advantage of being an integrated solution. In addition to its own multi-level threat detection capabilities, its ability to seamlessly integrate with other McAfee security products, protects your network against malware and other Advanced Persistent Threats (APTs).

You can integrate McAfee Advanced Threat Defense with Network Security Platform. After you integrate, both the Sensor and the Manager communicate with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense separately to augment your defense against malware.

Outline of how this integration works— Based on how you have configured the corresponding Advanced Malware policy, the IPS Sensor detects a file download and sends a copy of the file to McAfee Advanced Threat Defense for analysis. If McAfee Advanced Threat Defense detects the file to be a malware immediately, the Sensor can block the download. The Manager displays the results of the analysis from McAfee Advanced Threat Defense.

If McAfee Advanced Threat Defense requires more time for analysis, the Sensor allows the file to be downloaded. If McAfee Advanced Threat Defense detects a malware after the file has been downloaded, it informs Network Security Platform, and you can use the Sensor to quarantine the host until it is cleaned and remediated. You can configure the Manager to update all the Sensors about this malicious file. Therefore, if that file is downloaded again anywhere in your network, your Sensors might be able to block it.

🗹 Note

The Sensor that is integrated with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense can be deployed in inline, tap, or SPAN mode. However, similar to other malware engines, response actions such as *Block* and *Send TCP Reset* might not have the desired effect since the file might have reached the target host.

Advantages

The following are the advantages of integrating Network Security Platform with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense.

• When a supported file is being downloaded into your network, it can be analyzed in depth using McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. This fortifies your already strong anti-malware defense with Network Security Platform.

• McAfee Advanced Threat Defense is not an inline device. It can receive files from IPS Sensors for malware analysis. So, it is possible to deploy McAfee Advanced Threat Defense in such a way that you obtain the advantages of an inline antimalware solution but without the associated drawbacks.

• McAfee Advanced Threat Defense does not sniff or tap into your network traffic. It analyzes the files submitted to it for malware. This means that you can place the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance anywhere in your network as long as it is reachable to all the integrated McAfee products. It is also possible for one McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance to cater to all such integrated products (assuming the number of files submitted is within the supported level). This design can make it a very cost-effective and scalable anti-malware solution.

• Android is currently one of the top targets for malware developers. With this integration, the Android-based handheld devices on your network are also protected. You can dynamically analyze the files downloaded by your Android devices such as smartphones and tablets.

• Files are concurrently analyzed by various engines. So, it is possible for known malware to be blocked in almost real time.

• When McAfee Advanced Threat Defense dynamically analyzes a file, it selects the analyzer virtual machine that uses the same operating system and other applications as that of the target host. This is achieved through its integration with McAfee ePO or through passive device profiling feature of Network Security Platform. This enables you to identify the exact impact on a targeted host, so that you can take the required remedial measures. This also means that McAfee Advanced Threat Defense executes the file only the required virtual machine, thereby preserving its resources for other files.

• Consider a host downloaded a zero-day malware, but a Sensor that detected this file downloaded submitted it to McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. After a dynamic analysis, McAfee Advanced Threat Defense determines the file to be malicious. Based on how you have configured the Advanced Malware policy, it is possible for the Manager to add this malware to the block list of all the Sensors in your organization's network. This file also might be on the blacklist of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. Thus, the chances of the same file re-entering your network is reduced.

• Even the first time when a zero-day malware is downloaded, you can contain it by quarantining the affected hosts until they are cleaned and remediated.

• You can view the disassembly listing of PE files. The rich reporting feature of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense is also now available for the files detected by your Sensors.

Terminologies

Being familiar with the following terminologies facilitates malware analysis using Advanced Threat Defense.

• **Static analysis** — When Advanced Threat Defense receives a supported file for analysis, it first performs static analysis of the file. The objective is to check if it is a known malware in the shortest possible time, and also to preserve the Advanced Threat Defense resources for dynamic analysis. For static analysis, Advanced Threat Defense uses the following resources.

3 Integration with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense

🗹 Note

Static analysis sequence is following.

1.Global Whitelist > 2.Local Blacklist > 3.McAfee GTI / McAfee Gateway Anti-Malware Engine / McAfee Anti-Malware Engine (These three resources are processed in tandem.)

• **Global Whitelist** — This is the list of MD5/SHA-256 hash values of trusted files and VBA scripts embedded inside a Microsoft Office application, which need not be analyzed.

The whitelist feature is disabled by default. To enable or disable it, use the setwhitelist command. Use the **Global Whitelist** page in the **Manage** tab to manage the entries in the whitelist. In a load-balancing scenario, after the cluster
creation, you need to run whitelistMerge cluster command on the Active node to manually copy the Global
Whitelist database of Active node onto Secondary/Backup nodes. This is only a one-time activity, after which the
Whitelist database of Secondary/Backup nodes is automatically overwritten by that of Active node at 0000 hours on a
daily basis.

🗹 Note

The default whitelist entries are not periodically updated. However, they might be updated when you upgrade the Advanced Threat Defense software. When you upgrade the Advanced Threat Defense software to build 3.4.8.190 and above, MD5 added into the whitelist will be merged into Global Whitelist.

The McAfee products that submit files to Advanced Threat Defense do have the capability to perform custom whitelisting as well. This includes the McAfee Web Gateway and the McAfee Network Security Platform.

• Local Blacklist — This is the list of MD5 hash values of known malware stored in the Advanced Threat Defense database. When Advanced Threat Defense detects a malware through its heuristic McAfee Gateway Anti-Malware engine or through dynamic analysis, it updates the local blacklist with the file's MD5 hash value. A file is added to this list automatically only when its malware severity as determined by Advanced Threat Defense is medium, high, or very high. There are commands to manage the entries in the blacklist.

• **McAfee GTI** — This is a global threat correlation engine and intelligence base of global messaging and communication behavior, which enables the protection of the customers against both known and emerging electronic threats across all threat areas. The communication behavior includes the reputation, volume, and network traffic patterns. Advanced Threat Defense uses both the IP Reputation and File Reputation features of GTI.

🗹 Note

DNS must be configured for GTI to run.

🗹 Note

For File Reputation queries to succeed, make sure Advanced Threat Defense is able to communicate with tunnel.message.trustedsource.org over HTTPS (TCP/443). Advanced Threat Defense retrieves the URL updates from List.smartfilter.com over HTTP (TCP/80).

• **Gateway Anti-Malware** — McAfee Gateway Anti-Malware Engine analyzes the behavior of web sites, web site code, and downloaded Web 2.0 content in real time to preemptively detect and block malicious web attacks. It

protects businesses from modern blended attacks, including viruses, worms, adware, spyware, riskware, and other crimeware threats, without relying on virus signatures.

McAfee Gateway Anti-Malware Engine is embedded within Advanced Threat Defense to provide real-time malware detection.

• Custom Yara Scanner — Custom Yara Scanner is a set of YARA rules.

• **Anti-Malware** — McAfee Anti-Malware Engine is embedded within Advanced Threat Defense. The DAT is updated automatically based on the network connectivity of Advanced Threat Defense.

Static analysis also involves analysis through reverse engineering of the malicious code. This includes analyzing all the instructions and properties to identify the intended behaviors, which might not surface immediately. This also provides detailed malware classification information, widens the security cover, and can identify associated malware that leverages code re-use.

🗹 Note

By default, Advanced Threat Defense downloads the updates for McAfee Gateway Anti-Malware Engine and McAfee Anti-Malware Engine every 90 minutes. To manually update these files, use CLI command, update_avdat.

• **Dynamic Analysis** — In this case, Advanced Threat Defense executes the file in a secure VM and monitors its behavior to check how malicious the file is. At the end of the analysis, it provides a detailed report as required by the user. Advanced Threat Defense does dynamic analysis after the static analysis is done. By default, if static analysis identifies the malware, Advanced Threat Defense does not perform dynamic analysis. However, you can configure Advanced Threat Defense to perform dynamic analysis regardless of the results from static analysis. You can also configure only dynamic analysis without static analysis. Dynamic analysis includes the disassembly listing feature of Advanced Threat Defense as well. This feature can generate the disassembly code of PE files for you to analyze the sample further.

🗹 Note

Dynamic analysis sequence is following.

1.Global Whitelist > 2.Local Blacklist > 3.McAfee GTI / McAfee Gateway Anti-Malware Engine / McAfee Anti-Malware Engine (These three resources are processed in tandem.) > 4.Yara Scanner > 5. Dynamic Analysis

• **Analyzer VM** — This is the virtual machine on the Advanced Threat Defense that is used for dynamic analysis. To create the analyzer VMs, you need to create the VMDK file with the required operating system and applications. Then, using SFTP, you import this file into the Advanced Threat Defense Appliance.

Only the following operating systems are supported to create the analyzer VMs:

- Microsoft Windows XP 32-bit Service Pack 2
- Microsoft Windows XP 32-bit Service Pack 3
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Service Pack 1
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Service Pack 2
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Service Pack 1
- Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit Service Pack 1

- Microsoft Windows 7 64-bit Service Pack 1
- Microsoft Windows 8.0 Pro 32-bit
- Microsoft Windows 8.0 Pro 64-bit
- Andriod 2.3 or 4.3 by default. You can upgrade it to Android 5.0.

All of the above Windows operating systems can be in English, Chinese Simplified, Japanese, German, or Italian.

🗹 Note

The only pre-installed analyzer VM is the Android VM.

You must create analyzer VMs for Windows. You can create different VMs based on your requirements. The number of analyzer VMs that you can create is limited only by the disk space of the Advanced Threat Defense Appliance. However, there is a limit as to how many of them can be used concurrently for analysis. The number of concurrent licenses that you specify also affects the number of concurrent instances for an analyzer VM.

• VM profile — After you upload the VM image (.vmdk file) to Advanced Threat Defense, you associate each of them with a separate VM profile. A VM profile indicates what is installed in a VM image and the number of concurrent licenses associated with that VM image. Using the VM image and the information in the VM profile, Advanced Threat Defense creates the corresponding number of analyzer VMs. For example, if you specify that you have 10 licenses for Windows XP SP2 32-bit, then Advanced Threat Defense understands that it can create up to 10 concurrent VMs using the corresponding .vmdk file.

• **Analyzer profile** — This defines how to analyze a file and what to report. In an analyzer profile, you configure the following:

- VM profile
- Analysis options
- Reports you wish to see after the analysis
- Password for zipped sample files
- Maximum execution time for dynamic analysis

You can create multiple analyzer profiles based on your requirements. For each Advanced Threat Defense user, you must specify a default analyzer profile. This is the analyzer profile that is used for all files uploaded by the user. Users who use the Advanced Threat Defense web application to manually upload files for analysis, can choose a different analyzer profile at the time of file upload. Always, the analyzer profile selected for a file takes precedence over the default analyzer profile of the corresponding user.

To dynamically analyze a file, the corresponding user must have the VM profile specified in the user's analyzer profile. This is how the user indicates the environment in which Advanced Threat Defense should execute the file. You can also specify a default Windows 32-bit and a 64-bit VM profile.

• **User** — A Advanced Threat Defense user is one who has the required permissions to submit files to Advanced Threat Defense for analysis and view the results. In case of manual submission, a user could use the Advanced Threat Defense web application or an FTP client. In case of automatic submission, you integrate McAfee products such as McAfee Network Security Platform or McAfee Web Gateway with Advanced Threat Defense. Then when these products detect a file

download, they automatically submit the file to Advanced Threat Defense before allowing the download to complete. So, for these products default user profiles are available in Advanced Threat Defense.

For each user, you define the default analyzer profile, which in turn can contain the VM profile. If you use the Advanced Threat Defense for uploading files for analysis, you can override this default profile at the time of file submission. For other users, Advanced Threat Defense uses the default profiles.

How Network Security Platform - integration works

When you integrate Network Security Platform with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense, the Sensor initiates a communication channel with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. This channel is open unless the Sensor is down, McAfee Advanced Threat Defense is down, or you disable the integration. By default, this communication channel is over SSL protocol. McAfee Advanced Threat Defense listens on port 8505 for such connections. You can also switch to TCP protocol for communication that McAfee Advanced Threat Defense listens on port 8506.

🗹 Note

The TCP channel feature will work with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense 3.4.8 and higher.

🗹 Note

If the communication channel between the Sensor and McAfee Advanced Threat Defense goes down, the system fault *Sensor connectivity status with Advanced Threat Defense device* is displayed.

The Manager accesses the RESTful APIs of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense for its communication. When a connection is required, the Manager establishes an HTTPS connection. McAfee Advanced Threat Defense listens on a fixed port number 443 for such connections.

The integration with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense enhances the Advance Malware feature of Network Security Platform. This enables you to detect even unknown malware. This integration takes advantage of the in-depth analyzing capabilities of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense including its ability to dynamically analyze and disassemble files.

🗹 Note

For McAfee Advanced Threat Defense, both the Manager and Sensor are like users. So, a user profile called *nsp* is pre-defined in McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. By default, the Manager uses the user name and password defined in this profile to establish its communication with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense . When the Sensor submits a file for analysis, McAfee Advanced Threat Defense uses the analyzer profile defined in the *nsp* to determine how to analyze the file and what to report back to the Manager. The Manager also allows different Sensors to have their own analyzer profile as per configured by the respective Sensor users.

When you integrate with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense, Advanced Threat Defense is available as an additional malware engine for all the supported file types in the Advanced Malware Policies. You can select this engine along with any of the other malware engines except NTBA. Because McAfee Gateway Anti-Malware Engine is available in both McAfee Advanced Threat Defense and NTBA appliance, you can only select either of these engines for a file type.

Details of how the integration works

Following is the procedure and process flow when the integration with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense involves a standalone Sensor and Manager.

🗹 Note

McAfee GTI File Reputation is available both in the Advanced Malware policies of Network Security Platform as well as in McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. McAfee recommends that you enable McAfee GTI File Reputation in both Network Security Platform and McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. The Sensor can respond quicker if it is configured in the Advanced Malware policy because, in this case, it directly communicates with McAfee GTI.

- 1. You configure McAfee Advanced Threat Defense integration details for the required Sensor.
- 2. You enable the Advanced Threat Defense as one of the malware engines in the corresponding Advanced Malware policy. For the sake of explanation, assume that you have enabled all the engines except NTBA for all the file types.

🗹 Note

Based on which engine reports back first, the IPS Sensor takes the response action. Consider that you have configured high-severity malware to be blocked by the Sensor. McAfee GTI File Reputation configured in Network Security Platform reports a file as high-severity malware. Then, the Sensor blocks this file even before receiving the results from the Advanced Threat Defense engine.

3. You have applied this Advanced Malware policy to the required inline ports.

🗹 Note

The Advanced Threat Defense malware engine can be used with SPAN and tap ports as well. However, similar to other malware engines, response actions such as *Block* and *Send TCP Reset* might not have the desired effect since the file might have reached the target host.

- 4. If the Sensor detects a supported file type being downloaded over HTTP or SMTP (encoded using Base64 only), then it extracts the file and checks it against its allow list and then its block list.
- 5. Assume that the file's hash value is not listed in the Sensor's allow or block list. The Sensor constantly streams the file, as the user downloads it, to all the other engines for a concurrent analysis. The Sensor holds the last packet from the user for a specific time period, while it awaits the results from any of the configured malware engines.
- 6. From the analyzer profile configured in the respective Network Security Platform user profile, McAfee Advanced Threat Defense determines the analysis methods and the reports to be generated.

• If McAfee Advanced Threat Defense responds with a malware score that meets the **Action Thresholds** for alerting in the Advanced Malware policy, the Sensor raises *Malware: Malicious file detected by ATD* alert and takes the other configured response actions.

• If McAfee Advanced Threat Defense responds with a malware score that does not meet the **Action Thresholds**, the Sensor raises an informational alert called, *Malware: Unknown file download detected and submitted to ATD for analysis.* As expected, no response actions are taken. If the file is determined to be clean, the Manager deletes this alert. If there is any change in the malware score, the Manager updates the same alert.

🗹 Note

As mentioned earlier, the Manager uses the user name and password defined in *nsp* profile to establish its communication with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. The Manager also allows different Sensors to have their own analyzer profile as per configured by the respective Sensor users.

Recall that McAfee Advanced Threat Defense must respond within the file scan timeout for the Sensor to function as explained above.

- 7. Network Security Platform performs malware analysis on files in the following sequence:
 - M-series and Virtual IPS: Allow and Block Lists → TIE/GTI File Reputation/McAfee Cloud (for apk files) → NSP Analysis → Advanced Threat Defense or NTBA (if Advanced Threat Defense is disabled)
 - NS-series: Allow and Block Lists → TIE/GTI File Reputation/McAfee Cloud (for apk files) → NSP Analysis → Gateway Anti-Malware → Advanced Threat Defense
- 8. The Manager continuously queries McAfee Advanced Threat Defense for the results of this analysis. When the reports are received, the Manager updates the record in the **Malware Files** page.
- 9. Since, dynamic analysis is a time taking process, there is a need to carefully employ this process for improved user experience. Network Security Platform submits files to McAfee Advanced Threat Defense for dynamic analysis only if the other engines enabled report back the malware confidence as medium or above.
- 10. Assume that the results of dynamic analysis indicate that the file is malicious with a severity level of *high*. You can now use the **Quarantine** feature to quarantine the host from the rest of the network until you are sure the host is safe again.
- 11. Because the malware severity is high, McAfee Advanced Threat Defense adds the MD5 hash of this file to its local blacklist. So, the next time this file is submitted by any source, it is able to respond in the shortest possible time.

🗹 Note

Recall that McAfee Advanced Threat Defense adds a file to its blacklist if the malware severity of the file is medium, high, or very high.

12. If you had configured the **Add to Block List** action threshold in the Advanced Malware policy, the Manager can include the MD5 hash of this file in the block list of all its Sensors. Therefore, when the same file is detected by any of the Sensors, it is blocked by that Sensor itself. This reduces the chances of such malware entering your network again.

🗹 Note

McAfee recommends that you verify how the Advanced Malware feature works for a period of time, fine-tune it until it functions as expected, and only then enable the **Add to Block List** action threshold in the Advanced Malware policies.

What happens in case of MDR?

- 1. You configure the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense in the active Manager. It takes 15 minutes for this configuration to be copied to the standby. Alternatively, you can use the **Retrieve Configuration** feature in the standby to immediately copy the MDR configuration to the standby.
- 2. When a Sensor submits a file to McAfee Advanced Threat Defense, it informs both the Managers. So, both the Managers query McAfee Advanced Threat Defense separately for the results of the file.

3. Every 10 minutes, both the Managers cross-check their malware report data from McAfee Advanced Threat Defense and ensure that the data is synchronized.

What happens in case of Sensors in failover?

- When you configure the integration for the failover Sensors, both the Sensors establish separate communication channels with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. So, McAfee Advanced Threat Defense considers them to be different users. It sends the update only to the Sensor that submitted the file.
- 2. The file is extracted only by the Sensor that detected it. If a Sensor goes down within the packet hold time interval, based on the port configuration, the file might be forwarded without malware analysis or dropped.
- 3. If the Sensor goes down after the packet hold time interval but before the file session time interval, the updates from McAfee Advanced Threat Defense is lost since it is sent only to the Sensor that submitted the file.

Considerations

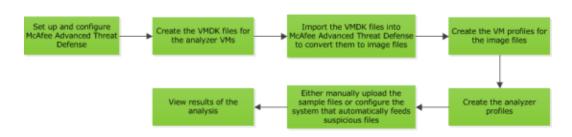
Review this section before your proceed to integrate Network Security Platform with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense.

- You need a Manager and Sensor running on versions 8.1 or later.
- You need McAfee Advanced Threat Defense 3.0 or later.
- You can integrate multiple Sensors with the same McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance. The Manager also allows different Sensors to have their own analyzer profile as per configured by the respective Sensor users. This implies that the users can use a singleMcAfee Advanced Threat Defense device, but can use a different analyzer profile per IPS device or per interface.

High-level steps for integrating with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense

This section provides the high-level steps on how to integrate Network Security Platform with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. This section assumes that McAfee Advanced Threat Defense is up and running. For information on how to install and configure McAfee Advanced Threat Defense, see its documentation.

Summarized steps for configuring malware analysis



1. Set up the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance and ensure it is up and running.

• Make sure the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance has the network connections it needs for your application. Make sure the Sensor, Manager, and the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance are able to ping each other.

• Make sure the required static analysis modules, such as the McAfee GTI and McAfee Gateway Anti-Malware Engine have the latest DATs.

- 2. Create the required VMDK files for the analyzer VMs and import them into McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. The Android analyzer VM is available by default.
- 3. Convert the VMDK files to image files and then create the corresponding VM profiles.
- 4. Create the analyzer profiles you need under McAfee Advanced Threat Defense interface . Select this analyzer profile from the drop-down list under under the Maganer interface. The Manager also allows different Sensors to have their own analyzer profile as per configured by the respective Sensor users. This implies that the users can use a single McAfee Advanced Threat Defense device, but can have different analyzer profile per Network Security Platform device or per interface.
- 5. If you want McAfee Advanced Threat Defense to upload the results to an FTP server, then configure it and have the details with you before you create the profiles for the corresponding users.
- 6. Log on to McAfee Advanced Threat Defense web application using respective Network Security Platform user credential created for different Sensors integrated with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense and upload a sample file for analysis. This is to check if you have configured McAfee Advanced Threat Defense as required.
- 7. In the **Analysis Status** page, monitor the status of the analysis.
- 8. After the analysis is complete, view the report in the **Analysis Results** page.

For information on all the above tasks, see the *McAfee Advanced Threat Defense Product Guide*.

To integrate McAfee Advanced Threat Defense and Network Security Platform, these additional steps are required:

- 1. Configure the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense details for the required admin domains and enable communication.
- 2. Enable the integration for the required Sensors under those domains. You can inherit the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense details from the admin domain or override them at the Sensor level.
- 3. Configure an Advanced Malware policy with Advanced Threat Defense selected for the required file types. Ensure that you have assigned this Advanced Malware policy to the required inline monitoring ports. See the *McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide* for information on how to configure and apply Advanced Malware policies.

Integrating Network Security Platform and McAfee Advanced Threat Defense

When you integrate Network Security Platform and McAfee Advanced Threat Defense both the Manager and Sensor communicate with the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense separately. You have to configure the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense details for all the required Sensors and then enable the integration.

If you want to configure multiple Sensors with the same McAfee Advanced Threat Defense, you can specify the details at the admin domain and inherit the settings Sensor level. This saves you the trouble of having to configure the same details multiple times. If required, you can also customize the inherited settings for the required Sensors.

Enable McAfee Advanced Threat Defense integration for an admin domain

You can configure the details for the integration at an admin domain so that the corresponding Sensors and child domains can inherit these settings. However, you must enable the integration at the Sensor level for the Sensor and the Manager to be able to communicate with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense.

Task

- 1. In the Manager, select the **Devices** tab.
- 2. Select the required domain from the **Domain** drop-down list and then select **Global**.
- 3. Select IPS Device Settings \rightarrow ATD Integration.
- 4. Enter the configuration details in the corresponding fields.

Enabling the integration for an admin domain

/My Company > IPS Device Settin	ngs > ATD Integration ?
analysis. Enabling integration with AT 1. Enable integration with the ATD	
ATD Integration	
	e settings below to communicate directly with the ATD appliance - the sensors use them to submit suspicious files for n to retrieve the analysis results for display.
	this domain (and child admin domains) inherit the settings below. Enabling integration from this page therefore riting IPS sensors and the ATD appliance. You can alternatively enable/customize integration on a per-domain or
Enable ATD Integration?	
Sensor-to-ATD Communication	*
ATD IP Address:	
ATD Listening Port (TCP):	8505
Manager-to-ATD Communication	on 🌣
Use a Different IP Address for Manager-to-ATD Communication?	
ATD IP Address:	
ATD Listening Port (TCP):	443
	Test Connection
Authentication and File Submis	sion 😞
ATD Username:	nsp
Password for 'nsp':	
ATD User Profile for File Submission:	nsp 🗸 C
Open ATD Console	Save

Option definitions

Option	Definition
Enable ATD Integration?	Select to configure the details for the integration at this domain level.
ATD IP Address	Enter the IPv4 address of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense for communicating with Sensor.

Option	Definition
ATD Listening Port (TCP)	This is the port that McAfee Advanced Threat Defense will listen for connections from Sensors. The default port is 8505. You can modify if required.
Use a Different IP Address for Manager-to- ATD Communication?	Check if you want Manager to communicate with the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance using a different IP address than the IP address the Sensor is using to communicate with the same McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance.
ATD IP Address	Enter the IPv4 address of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense for communicating with Manager. Enter same IP address entered above incase you have not checked Use a Different IP Address for Manager-to-ATD Communication? box, else enter different IP address for communication between Manager and McAfee Advanced Threat Defense.
ATD Listening Port (TCP)	This is the port that McAfee Advanced Threat Defense will listen for connections from Sensors. The default port is 8505. You can modify if required.
Test connection	Click to verify if the Manager is able to communicate with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense using the details you configured. For the Sensor, you can ping the IP address of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance from the Sensor CLI.
ATD Username	The pre-defined user name, which the Manager uses to log on to McAfee Advanced Threat Defense is displayed. You cannot enter a different name or change this default name in McAfee Advanced Threat Defense.
Password for "nsp"	 Enter the corresponding password. The default password is <i>admin</i>. As a precaution, change this password in the NSP User user record in McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. a. Click Open ATD Console to open McAfee Advanced Threat Defense web application. b. In McAfee Advanced Threat Defense web application select Manage → User Management. c. Select NSP User and click Edit to change the password. d. Click Save.
ATD User Profile for File Submission	Select from the drop-down your user profile, created under McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. With the 9.1 release a Sensor can have its own analyzer profile as per configured by the user.

Option	Definition
Save	Saves the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense details in the Manager database.
Open ATD Console	Click to access the logon page of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense with which the Sensor is currently integrated.

Enable McAfee Advanced Threat Defense integration for a Sensor

The integration between McAfee Advanced Threat Defense and Network Security Platform is established only when you enable this integration at the Sensor level. If you enable this integration globally for an admin domain, then by default this integration is enabled for the corresponding Sensors. You can customize these settings at the Sensor level.

Task

- 1. In the Manager, select the **Devices** tab.
- 2. Select the domain from the **Domain** drop-down list.
- 3. On the left pane, click the **Devices** tab.
- 4. Select Setup \rightarrow ATD Integration.
- 5. Enter the configuration details in the corresponding fields.

Enabling the integration for a Sensor

/My Company > > Setup :	> ATD Integration ?
When integration with McAfee Advance analysis. Enabling integration with AT	ed Threat Defense (ATD) is enabled, IPS sensors send suspicious files to ATD appliances for advanced malware D consists of the following steps:
1. Enable integration with the ATD	appliance (from this page).
2. Enable the ATD engine within an	advanced malware policy, and assign that policy to IPS sensor interfaces (from the <u>Advanced Malware Policies</u> page).
ATD Integration	
	e settings below to communicate directly with the ATD appliance - the sensors use them to submit suspicious files for n to retrieve the analysis results for display.
Tip: You can alternatively enable/cu	istomize integration on multiple IPS sensors at once per <u>admin domain</u> .
Inherit Settings?	
Enable ATD Integration?	
Sensor-to-ATD Communication	*
ATD IP Address:	
ATD Listening Port (TCP):	8505
Manager-to-ATD Communication	on
Use a Different IP Address for Manager-to-ATD Communication?	
ATD IP Address:	
ATD Listening Port (TCP):	443
	Test Connection
Authentication and File Submit	ssion
ATD Username:	nsp
Password for 'nsp':	
ATD User Profile for File Submission:	nsp 💌 C
Open ATD Console	Save

Option definitions

Option	Definition
Inherit Settings?	Select to inherit the integration configuration from the corresponding admin domain. The remaining fields are available only if this is de-selected.
Enable ATD Integration?	Select to integrate the Sensor with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. After you select, you are able to view and configure the details for the integration.
ATD IP Address	Enter the static IPv4 address of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense.
ATD Listening Port (TCP)	This is the port that McAfee Advanced Threat Defense will listen for connections from Sensors. The default port is 8505. You can modify if required.
Use a Different IP Address for Manager-to- ATD Communication?	Check if you want Manager to communicate with the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance using a different IP address than the IP address the Sensor is using to communicate with the same McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance.
ATD IP Address	Enter the IPv4 address of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense.
ATD Listening Port (TCP)	This is the port that McAfee Advanced Threat Defense will listen for connections from Manager. The default port is 8505. You can modify if required.
Test Connection	Click to verify if the Manager is able to communicate with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense using the details you configured. For the Sensor, you can ping the IP address of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance from the Sensor CLI.
ATD Username	The pre-defined user name, which the Manager uses to log on to McAfee Advanced Threat Defense is displayed. You cannot enter a different name or change this default name in McAfee Advanced Threat Defense.
Password for "nsp"	 Enter the corresponding password. The default password is <i>admin</i>. As a precaution, change this password in the NSP User user record in McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. a. Click Open ATD Console to open McAfee Advanced Threat Defense web application. b. In McAfee Advanced Threat Defense web application select Manage → User
	Management.

Option	Definition
	c. Select NSP User and click Edit to change the password. d. Click Save.
ATD User Profile for File Submission	Select from the drop-down your user profile, created under McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. With the releases later 8.1, a Sensor can have its own analyzer profile as per configured by the user.
Save	Saves the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense details in the Manager database.
Open ATD Console	Click to access the logon page of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense with which the Sensor is currently integrated.

Add an Advanced Malware policy

You configure the anti-malware options in an Advanced Malware policy and then assign it to the required Sensor monitoring resources such as ports, interfaces, and subinterfaces. You must do a configuration and signature set update for any changes in the policy to take effect.

Task

- 1. Select **Policy** and then select the required admin domain from the **Domain** drop-down list.
- 2. Select Intrusion Prevention \rightarrow Policy Types \rightarrow Advanced Malware Policies.
- 3. Click New.

The Advanced Malware Policy page for a new policy opens.

Update the properties of the Advanced Malware policy

Properties			\approx
Name:	Advanced Malware Policy Name	- Traffic to Inspect	
Description:		☑ HTTP	
Owner:	/My Company	FTP	
Visible to Child Admin Domains?		SMTP	

4. Update the following properties.

Field name	Description
Name	Name of the policy.
Description	Description of the policy.
Owner	Name of the admin domain to which the policy belongs.
Visible to Child Admin Domains?	Specifies whether the policy is applicable to all child admin domains.
Traffic to Inspect	Protocols over which advanced malware scanning is performed. The supported protocols are HTTP, FTP, and SMTP.
	Note: Enable HTTP Response scanning to scan files in the HTTP data stream.
	Note: FTP malware detection overrides the accelerate-ftp feature even if it is enabled. For more information on the accelerate-ftp CLI command, see <i>McAfee Network Security Platform Sensor Reference Guide</i> .

5. Update the **Scanning Options**.

Update the scanning options of the Advanced Malware policy

Scanning Options												1
e the options below to d obability that a file is mai ote: Name resolution mus wice software versions. (p: Files saved to the Mar	icious. For exa t be enabled o 5 MB is the lim	mple, you may wa n devices on whic it in some cases.]	the GTI File Re Please consult	utables through eputation, Gatev the online help f	all applicable engir vay Anti-Mawlare o or details.	nes, be alerted or or <i>McAfee Cloud</i> e	n <i>Medium</i> (or al Ingine will be us	oove) confidence, ed, and not all file	and block on <i>High</i> size limits below a	(or above) confide	ence.	5
p. They suved to the Mar	Maximum	Malware Engine	-	cernandre nie		in the me system	. Non_inonali	Action Threshol				
File Type	File Size (KB) Scanned	Allow and Block Lists	TIE / GTI File Reputation	NSP Analysis	Gateway Anti-Malware	Advanced Threat Defense	McAfee Cloud	Alert	Block	Send TCP Reset	Add to Block List	Save File
Executables	5120	V	V		V			High	High	High	Disabled	Disabled
MS Office Files	1024	V	v		V	V		High	High	High	Disabled	Disabled
PDF Files	1024	V	V	v	V	V		High	High	High	Disabled	Disabled
Compressed Files	5120	V	V		V			High	High	High	Disabled	Disabled
Android Application P	2048	V	v			V	v	High	High	High	Disabled	Disabled
Java Archives	2048	V	V		V	V		High	High	High	Disabled	Disabled
Flash Files	2048	V	V	v	V	V		High	High	High	Disabled	Disabled
<												1

🗹 Note

Name resolution must be enabled on devices which will be using the GTI File Reputation malware engine.

Field name	Description
File Type	The file types to be scanned. For information about the supported file types, refer the table <i>Advanced malware file extension support</i> below.
Maximum File Size (KB) Scanned	This the maximum size currently supported for the corresponding file type. Files that exceed the specified size are not analyzed for malware by any of the engines, including the block and allow lists.
	The default values are displayed in the Default Malware Policy as well as when you create a policy. The default values are the optimum sizes recommended by McAfee Labs based on their research on malware.
	You can set the maximum file size value up to 25 MB for all file types. However, the NSP Analysis engine and McAfee Cloud engine have a file-size limit. The limits for each Sensor model are as follows:
	NS-series Sensors - 50 MB
	 M-series Sensors - 5 MB Virtual IPS Sensors - 5 MB
	Note: McAfee recommends that for any file type, you do not set a value more than 5 MB as the maximum file size as this might affect the Sensor's performance.
Malware Engines	The Malware engines to scan the selected file type. If you select Gateway Anti-Malware for a File Type , you must either use an NS-series Sensor running Sensor software version 9.1 or above or NTBA.
	For Advanced Threat Defense to work, you must integrate the corresponding Sensors with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. See the chapter, <i>Integration with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense</i> , in the <i>McAfee Network Security Platform Integration Guide</i> for more information.
Action	Specifies the type of response to be made for the attack. The types of responses are:
Thresholds	Alert— Alerts are raised in Attack Log.
	• Block — This action blocks packets for detected malware. Thus preventing the malicious file from reaching the host.
	The first step towards prevention is typically to block attacks that have a high severity level. When

 attack packets response for those attacks. If not configured in the policy, the Attack Log allows you to update the policy to block traffic. Send TCP Reset— Disconnects a TCP connection at the source, destination, or both ends of the transmission. Thus preventing the malicious file from reaching the host. Note: This response may not work effectively with SPAN and tap deployments. Add to Block List— If any of the engines report the submitted file to be malicious, then the Manager adds the file's MD5 hash to the block list in its database. To be added to this list, the file's severity must be the same or more than what you specify in this field. For example, if you specify high as the criteria, then files of severity high and very high are added to the block list. Within the next 5 minutes, the Manager adds this file to the local block list of all the Sensors that it manages. Note: The TIE/GTI File Reputation engine does not support Add to Block List response action. You can manually add the desired malware file's MD5 hash to the block list from the Attack Log page. Save File— One of the response actions specified is the ability to archive the file in a file store based on the Advanced Malware policy. The files that are selected based on this configuration are forwarded to Manager. For files greater than 5 MB, only the first 5 MB is available as the saved file. 	Field name	Description
 Add to Block List— If any of the engines report the submitted file to be malicious, then the Manager adds the file's MD5 hash to the block list in its database. To be added to this list, the file's severity must be the same or more than what you specify in this field. For example, if you specify high as the criteria, then files of severity high and very high are added to the block list. Within the next 5 minutes, the Manager adds this file to the local block list of all the Sensors that it manages. Note: The TIE/GTI File Reputation engine does not support Add to Block List response action. You can manually add the desired malware file's MD5 hash to the block list from the Attack Log page. Save File— One of the response actions specified is the ability to archive the file in a file store based on the Advanced Malware policy. The files that are selected based on this configuration are forwarded to Manager. For files greater than 5 MB, only the first 5 MB is available as the saved file. 		 to update the policy to block traffic. Send TCP Reset— Disconnects a TCP connection at the source, destination, or both ends of the
 Manager adds the file's MD5 hash to the block list in its database. To be added to this list, the file's severity must be the same or more than what you specify in this field. For example, if you specify <i>high</i> as the criteria, then files of severity <i>high</i> and <i>very high</i> are added to the block list. Within the next 5 minutes, the Manager adds this file to the local block list of all the Sensors that it manages. Note: The TIE/GTI File Reputation engine does not support Add to Block List response action. You can manually add the desired malware file's MD5 hash to the block list from the Attack Log page. Save File— One of the response actions specified is the ability to archive the file in a file store based on the Advanced Malware policy. The files that are selected based on this configuration are forwarded to Manager. For files greater than 5 MB, only the first 5 MB is available as the saved file. 		Note: This response may not work effectively with SPAN and tap deployments.
 Action. You can manually add the desired malware file's MD5 hash to the block list from the Attack Log page. Save File— One of the response actions specified is the ability to archive the file in a file store based on the Advanced Malware policy. The files that are selected based on this configuration are forwarded to Manager. For files greater than 5 MB, only the first 5 MB is available as the saved file. 		Manager adds the file's MD5 hash to the block list in its database. To be added to this list, the file's severity must be the same or more than what you specify in this field. For example, if you specify <i>high</i> as the criteria, then files of severity <i>high</i> and <i>very high</i> are added to the block list. Within the
 based on the Advanced Malware policy. The files that are selected based on this configuration are forwarded to Manager. For files greater than 5 MB, only the first 5 MB is available as the saved file. 		action. You can manually add the desired malware file's MD5 hash to the block list from the
		based on the Advanced Malware policy. The files that are selected based on this configuration are
 The Sensor's simultaneous file scan capacity is reduced if the Save File option is enabled. See 		• To prevent the Manager's disk from getting frequently filled up, use the Save File feature sparingly.
the table in this section for the details.		

Advanced malware file extension support

File Type	НТТР	SMTP	FTP
Executebales	.acm	.acm	.acm
	.ax	.ax	.ax
	.com	.com	.com
	.cpl	.cpl	.cpl

File Type	нттр	SMTP	FTP
	.dll	.dll	.dll
	.drv	.drv	.drv
	.exe	.exe	.exe
	.fon	.fon	.fon
	.ocx	.ocx	.ocx
	.olb	.olb	.olb
	.pif	.pif	.pif
	.qts	.qts	.qts
	.qtx	.qtx	.qtx
	.scr	.scr	.scr
	.sys	.sys	.sys
	.vbx	.vbx	.vbx
	.vxd	.vxd	.vxd
MS Office Files			
	.doc	.doc	.doc
	.docx	.docx	.docx
	.ppt	.ppt	.ppt
	.pptx	.pptx	.pptx
	.rtf	.rtf	
	.xls	.xls	.xls
	.xlsx	.xlsx	.xlsx
PDF Files			
	.fdf	.fdf	.fdf
	.pdf	.pdf	.pdf
	.xdp	.xdp	
Compressed Files	.7z	.7z	
	.72 .pkzip	.72 .pkzip	.pkzip
	.μκτιμ	.μκΖιμ	·μκτιμ

File Type	НТТР	SMTP	FTP
	.rar	.rar	.rar
	.zip	.zip	.zip
Android Application Packages	.apk		.apk
Java Archive	.jar	.jar	.jar
Flash Files	.swf	.swf	

Note

McAfee might enhance the supported file types over time. The file types are subject to change with new signature sets. The Sensor cannot extract .zip, .jar, .apk and office open xml files if correct file extension is not present, as they share the same magic number 50 4B 03 04(PK).

Each file type is scanned by a Malware engine. Multiple malware engines can be selected to scan various file types. The Malware engines return a confidence level. Based on the confidence level, the following action thresholds can be set. The confidence levels supported are: Very low, low, medium, high, very high.

The Malware Engines supported per file type are:

File Type	TIE/GTI File Reputation	Allow and Block Lists	NSP Analysis	Gateway Anti- Malware	Advanced Threat Defense	McAfee Cloud
Executables	x	x		x	x	x
MS Office Files	x	x		x	x	
PDF Files	x	x	x	x	x	x
Compressed Files	x	x		x	x	
Android Application Package	x	x		x	x	X

File Type	TIE/GTI File Reputation	Allow and Block Lists	NSP Analysis	Gateway Anti- Malware	Advanced Threat Defense	McAfee Cloud
Java Archive	x	x		x	x	
Flash Files	x	x	х	x	x	

The maximum simultaneous file scan capacity per Sensor model is as follows.

Sensor	Maximum simultaneous file scan capacity with file save	Maximum simultaneous file scan capacity without file save
NS9500 stack - 100 Gbps throughput	1,000	1,024
NS9500 stack - 60 Gbps throughput	1,000	1,024
NS9500 stack - 40 Gbps throughput	1,000	1,024
NS9500 standalone - 30 Gbps throughput	1,000	1,024
NS9500 standalone - 20 Gbps throughput	1,000	1,024
NS9500 standalone - 10 Gbps throughput	1,000	1,024
NS9300, NS9200, NS9100	50	4,094
NS7350, NS7250, NS7150	50	4,094
NS7300, NS7200, NS7100	50	4,094
NS5200, NS5100	32	1,024
NS3500 - 200 Mbps throughput	16	255
NS3500 - 100 Mbps throughput	16	255

Sensor	Maximum simultaneous file scan capacity with file save	Maximum simultaneous file scan capacity without file save
NS3200, NS3100	16	255
IPS-VM600	32	1,024
M-8000, M-6050, M-4050, M-3050, M-8030, M-6030, M-4030	50	1,024
M-2950, M-2850, M-3030	32	1,024
M-1450, M-1250	16	255

6. To assign the Advanced Malware Policy to the available interfaces and direction (Inbound, Outbound), select **Prompt for assignment after save**.

Assign Interfaces

AllEngines_With_AlertOnly / Assignments					
Search Available Interfaces:					
Available Interfaces 🔺	Current Policy			Selected Interfaces (Policy Group)	
/My Company/M4050/1A-1B/Inbound					
/My Company/M4050/1A-1B/Outbound					
/My Company/M4050/2A-2B/Inbound			+		
/My Company/M4050/2A-2B/Outbound					
/My Company/M4050/3A-3B/Inbound			+		
/My Company/M4050/3A-3B/Outbound					
		*			
Objects: 58				Objects: 0	
					Reset
					Save Cancel

7. Select the required interface from the **Available Interfaces** column and add it to the **Selected Interfaces (Policy Group)** column.

8. Click Save.

You are directed to the new policy window.

Manage Advanced Malware policies

You can perform the following operations on an existing Advanced Malware policy.

Operation	Description
View Advanced Malware policies	The Advanced Malware Policies page allows you to view the Malware policies that have been assigned to the various resources of your Network Security Platform. Policies are listed per the Sensor, interface, and subinterface. From the root admin domain, you can see policies assigned to all child domains. For non-root parent domains, you only see the assigned policies in your parent and child domains. For child domains, you only see the policies assigned to the resources in your domain. Select Policy \rightarrow Advanced Malware Policies to view the assigned Malware policies.
Edit an Advanced Malware policy	Editing an Advanced Malware policy allows you to make the changes necessary to match the policy with the traffic you are monitoring. Editing a policy permanently changes that policy. If you intend to make slight changes to a policy but want to save it under a different name, try cloning an Advanced Malware policy.
	 Select Policy → <admin domain="" name=""> → Policy Types → Advanced Malware Policies. The Advanced Malware policies are listed.</admin> Select the policy to edit. Click Edit. Edit the policy parameters. Click Save.
Clone an Advanced Malware policy	 Cloning duplicates an existing policy, and is similar to a "save as" function. You can edit a Network Security Platform-provided policy. However, if you want to edit a copy of a policy, you can clone any existing policy to further refine the policy for application in a new environment. You can clone a provided policy, save it under a new name, and customize it for your unique environment. 1. Select Policy → <admin domain="" name=""> → Policy Types → Advanced Malware Policies. The policies are listed.</admin> 2. Select the policy you want to clone. 3. Click Clone
	 Click Clone. Type a new name for the policy, if required and edit the policy parameters.

3 Integration with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense

Operation	Description
Delete an	To delete an Advanced Malware policy you have created.
Advanced Malware policy	1. Select Policy \rightarrow <admin domain="" name=""> \rightarrow Policy Types \rightarrow Advanced Malware Policies.</admin>
	The Advanced Malware policies are listed.
	2. Select the policy to be deleted.
	3. Click Delete .
	4. Click Yes to confirm the deletion.
	You cannot delete a currently applied policy.
Export an	You can export and save one or more Advanced Malware policy into a file.
Advanced	1. Select Policy \rightarrow <admin domain="" name=""> \rightarrow Intrusion Prevention \rightarrow Advanced \rightarrow Policy Expo</admin>
Malware policy	\rightarrow Advanced Malware Policies.
	The existing Advanced Malware policies are listed.
	2. Select one or more policies to be exported.
	3. Click Export . You are prompted to specify the location to save the file.
	The policy is saved in an XML format in the specified location.
Import an	You can import an Advanced Malware policy from a saved file.
Advanced	
Malware policy	 Select Policy → <admin domain="" name=""> → Intrusion Prevention → Advanced → Policy</admin> Import → Advanced Malware Policies.
	To skip importing duplicate policy definition, select Skip duplicate policy definitions .
	2. Browse to the file location.
	2. Drowse to the file location.

Sensor CLI commands

The following are the Sensor CLI commands that show information related to McAfee Advanced Threat Defense integration.

- The status command additionally shows information related to the integration.
 - <u>Status</u> Shows whether the communication channel between the Sensor and McAfee Advanced Threat Defense is up or down.
 - IP The IP address of the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance with which the Sensor is integrated.
 - Port The port number used for the communication.

[Manager Communications]					
Trust Established		yeз			
Alert Channel		up			
Log Channel		up			
Authentication Channel		up			
Last Error					
Alerts Sent		18			
Logs Sent		6			
Logo Deno	•				
[Nexts Detected]					
[Alerts Detected]					
Signature		2	Alerts	Suppressed	: 0
Scan		0	Denial	of Service	: 0
Malware		16			
[McAfee NTBA Communicati	.01	n]			
Status		down			
IP		0.0.0.0			
Port	:	8505			
McAfee MATD Communicati	.01	n]			
Status		up			
TP		172.14.199.14			
Port	:	8505			

• From the debug mode, the switch matd channel command enables to select TCP or SSL channel for communication with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense.

🗹 Note

The TCP channel feature works with McAfee Advanced Threat Defense 3.4.8 or later.

• The show malwareenginestats command additionally shows the statistics for the ATD engine.

• A Sensor, for its connections through its management port with a McAfee Advanced Threat Defense appliance, uses NULL cipher (no encryption) by default. Using NULL cipher is required to support the analysis of much larger files. If you want this connection to be encrypted, use the following CLI command on the Sensor: set amchannelencryption <on><off>. To know if the connection is currently encrypted, use show amchannelencryption status on the Sensor CLI.

🗹 Note

Enabling encryption can have a performance degradation, which may impact the analysis of large files and high-volume of files.

For the details on these commands refer to McAfee Network Security Platform Sensor Reference Guide.

Analyze Malware Files

You can leverage the analysis technique provided by Network Security Platform to perform an in-depth analysis of the malware detected in your network. The Manager provides you with a complete view of the malware and threats on your network for further analysis and actions thus providing a comprehensive view of the threat landscape in your network. You can view the **Top Malware Files**. This dashboard is populated because a malicious file has been detected. In addition to viewing the threats to your network, the Manager also provides you the option to archive malware files.

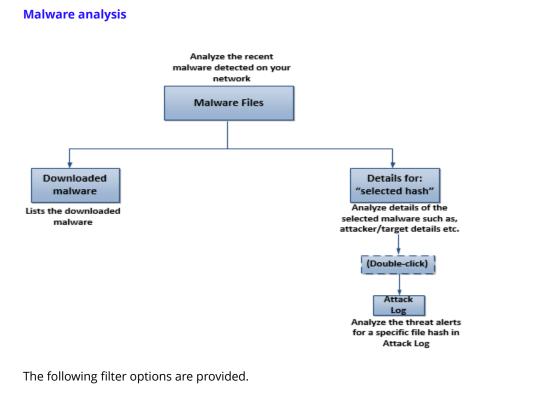
To view malware detected by Network Security Platform, use the **Top Malware Files** monitor. The dashboards displays the **Malware File Hash** and the **Attack Count** of the detected malware. The **Dashboard** page security monitors are displayed as bar charts.

Top Malware Files

Top Malware Files		~ ×
	Any Malware Confidence 🗸 Ar	ny Result 💌
/Adobe-Geticon-PlainPDF-xps		75
/AttackPDF/AdobeGeticon_Fla	14	
/AttackPDF/AdobeGeticon_Fla	14	
/attack.pdf/1483869a7215216	14	
/AttackPDF/AdobeGeticon_ASC	14	
	14	
/AttackPDF/AdobeGeticon_Fla	14	

If you want to drill down further on a specific malware, click on a bar, and you will be redirected to the **Analysis** \rightarrow **Malware Files** page, which displays additional details on that malware. This page provides you with the flexibility of filtering and sorting the information displayed based on your choice. In addition to these filtering/sorting options, you can also view the alerts that match the filter criteria by opening the **Attack Log** page directly from the **Threat Explorer**. You can view the malware files specific to admin domains by selecting the required admin domain from the **Domain** drop-down list. Summarized data for malware files, which includes data from the child domains, also can be viewed. If you have integrated the Manager with McAfee ePolicy Orchestrator, McAfee® Logon Collector, or McAfee Vulnerability Manager, you can view the endpoint name, operating system, open ports, and known vulnerabilities.

The following chart gives you the comprehensive analysis options provided by the **Malware Files** page. These tabs are explained in the subsequent sections.



View data specific to admin domain



Analyze detected malware within a specific time

Last 12 hours 🛛 💙
Last 5 minutes
Last 1 hour
Last 6 hours
Last 12 hours
Last 24 hours
Last 48 hours
Last 7 days
Last 14 days
Custom Time Period

Analyze the type of malware, whether blocked, unblocked, or all

*

Analyze the malware based on malware confidence returned by engines

Any Malware Confidence	~
Any Malware Confidence	
Very High Malware Confidence	
High+ Malware Confidence	
Medium+ Malware Confidence	
Low+ Malware Confidence	
Very Low+ Malware Confidence	9

Details of the detected malware

Use this page	to view malware files detected on your netwo	ork.										Manage Wi	hitelist and BlackL	List
Tip: Double-click a hash to view matching attacks.							Any Malware Cor	nfidence 🗸 Ar	y Result	Ƴ Last 14 days		▼ Search		G
Hash			Individual Engine Confidence											
Actions	Hash	Overall Malware * Confidence	Block	TIE / GTI File Reputation	NSP Analysis	Gateway Anti-Malware	Advanced Threat Defense	Endpoint Intelligence Agent	McAfee Cloud	Last Attack	Total Attacks	Last File Name	File Size (bytes)	c
ake action	7331df41dfb25c55271c1f111efc224e	Very High		Very High						Dec 31 15:59 GMT+	14	/new_p	2931	П
ake action	52fea0bc0b0f9e8c9a2b696af990974d	Very High			() Very High					Dec 30 15:57 GMT+	12	/new_p	2935	
ike action	fd0949289dee14a06f52a52a28b3264d	Very High			(i) Very High					Dec 30 16:05 GMT+	8	/new_p	2938	
ake action	fb6071b8a93fb4a658a843ad27a27b6c	Very High			() Very High					Dec 30 16:00 GMT+	8	/new_p	2939	
ake action	f7903dd1d99c34236160438c5ea83946	Very High					(i) Very High			Dec 30 16:07 GMT+	8	/new_p	2938	
ke action	f70d5fbd7d678cc12ae35618c8f38c0e	Very High			(i) Very High					Dec 30 16:02 GMT+	8	/new_p	2939	
ake action	f57263f3819f6d0ac792d9dc90fa31a4	Very High			() Very High					Dec 30 16:02 GMT+	8	/new_p	2939	

Option	Definitions
Hash	 Displays the hash value of the file and the actions that you can take. Actions— Click Take action to take the following actions:
	• Export — Click to download the malware file from the Manager server to a network location. The file is saved with an extension .mcafee. This prevents you from even accidentally opening the malicious file. The file is available for download only if you enable the Save File option for the corresponding file type in the Advanced Malware policy that detected this malware.

Option	Definitions
	Note: The antivirus program on your computer might prevent you from downloading the file.
	 Submit— Click to submit the malware detection to the GTI Cloud. Allow— Click to automatically add the file to the Manager's allow list. In the next 5 minutes, the Manager sends the MD5 hash value to the allow list of all the Sensors. Block— Click to automatically add the file to the Manager's block list. In the next 5 minutes, the Manager sends the MD5 hash value to the block list of all the Sensors. Hash— Displays the MD5 hash of the file.
Overall Malware Confidence	The overall malware confidence level returned by the configured malware scanning engines.
Individual Engine Confidence	The confidence level returned by each configured malware scanning engine, individually. Click $\widehat{f U}$ to view the engine-specific details.
Last Attack	The date and time the last malware was detected.
Total Attacks	The number of times the malware was detected.
Last File Name	The name of the last saved malware file. In case of HTTP downloads it will be the URL.
File Size (bytes)	The size of the malware file saved.
Comment	Additional comments on the detected malware.

Attack Log

Upon double-click on the malware file hash, the **Attack Log** opens where you can view and analyze alerts related to the selected hash.

Attack log alerts for the hash selected

										×
	d filtering, hover Unacknowledg In heading and Iw.	ed 💙 Last 14	days		▼ 119ec	10d821a7c810	i6b2277251 🗙	Clear	All Filters	C
		Event					Attacker			Targe
•	Name	Time 🔻	Direction	Result	Att Co	Packet Capture	IP Address	Port	Risk	IP Ad
1	MALWARE: Malicious File tran	Nov 18,	Inbound	Attack Blocked	1	Export	6.1.1.17	80		5.1.1
2	MALWARE: Malicious File tran	Nov 18,	Inbound	Attack Blocked	1	Export	6.1.1.17	80		5.1.1

To close the attack log, click **Back** or the **X** icon.

Manage Allow and Block lists

The **Manage Allow and Block lists** is a link to the **File Hash Exceptions** page. For more information, see the *McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide*.

View the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense specific details for a detected malware

Similar to viewing the specific details for other malware engines, you can also view the specific results returned by McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. In the **Malware Files** page, click ① next to the confidence level for **Advanced Threat Defense**.

Details returned by McAfee Advanced Threat Defense

	Envin	onment:	winXPsp3	
File Summary:				
nie Summary:	File Size (bytes) - 2931 MD5 - 7331DF41DFB250	File Name - 7331df41dfb25c55271c1f111efc224e File Size (bytes) - 2931 MD5 - 7331DF41DF825C55271C1F111EFC224E SHA1 - 76801E52802334FE2955B1974BC93ADC5F4C267A		
Malware Confidence:	Very High			
Malware Indicators: Individual Engine Results	Malware - Identified as TYPE_TR(- Identified as Exploit.P - Manipulated with the server supports - Set a filter function to http://msdn.microsoft.c - Searched for the spec - Created named mutte - Disabled attach/detad - Set hook procedure to	DJAN by DF.q.gen service na supersectory om/en-utial title to cobjectory notificatory control	by Anti-Naiware me in the Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE) Je the top-level exception handler (s/library/vstudio/x85tt0dd.aspx) p-level windows ions from dynamic link library system activities descriptor for newly created process	~
Engine	Malware Confidence	Malwa	re Name	
Gateway Anti-Malware	Very High	Heuris	tic.BehavesLike.PDF.Exploit-NRM.C	
GTI File Reputation	Very High	TYPE_1	FROJAN	
Anti-Malware	Very High	Exploit	- PDF. q. gen	
Sandbox	Low			
Sandbox Analysis Results				\approx
Analysis Environment:	Microsoft Windows X	Professi	ional Service Pack 3 (build 2600)	
Download Full Analysis Report	Open ATD Console			Close

Field descriptions

Field	Description
Environment	The VM profile that was used by McAfee Advanced Threat Defense to dynamically analyze the file. This indicates the operating system on which the file was executed.
File Summary	The name of the file, its size, and hash values are displayed.
Malware Confidence	The highest malware severity returned by the components of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense.
Malware Indicators	The summary of the reports from the various analysis methods employed by McAfee Advanced Threat Defense.
Individual Engine Results	This section lists the analysis methods available in McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. Here, they are referred to as Engine . The severity level returned by each method and the name for the malware are also displayed. If a particular method is not used, it indicates that it is not selected in the analyzer profile used for the Sensor.
Sandbox Analysis Results	This section displays the details if the file was dynamically analyzed by McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. This includes the details of the analyzer VM, the time and duration of the dynamic analysis, behavior during dynamic analysis, and so on.

Field	Description
Analysis Environment	This indicates the operating system on which the file was executed along with the build number of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense.
Download Full Analysis Report	Downloads a zip file that contains all the reports for the malware from McAfee Advanced Threat Defense. This is equivalent to downloading the reports zip file from the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense web application. This zip file contains the reports for each analysis. The contents of this zip file are explained beneath this table.
Open ATD Console	Click to open the logon page of the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense that analyzed the file.
Close	Closes the Advanced Threat Defense Engine Results window.

Download the <file hash>.zip file to the desired location. The files in this zip are created and stored with a standard naming convention. Based on the reports selected in the analyzer profile used for the analysis, the zip contains the following results:

• <file hash>_summary.html (.json, .txt, .xml). This is the same as the Analysis Summary report in the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense web application. There are four file formats for the same summary report in the zip file. The html and txt files are mainly for end-users to review the analysis report. The .json and .xml files provide well-known malware behavior tags for high-level programming script to extract key information.

• <file hash>.log. This file captures the Windows user-level DLL API calling activities during dynamic analysis. You must thoroughly examine this file to understand the complete API calling sequence as well as the input and output parameters. This is the same as the User API Log report in the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense web application.

• <file hash>ntv.txt. This file captures the Windows native services API calling activities during dynamic analysis.

• <file hash>.txt. This file shows the PE header information of the submitted sample.

 <file hash>_detail.asm. This is the same as the Disassembly Results report in the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense web application. This file contains reverse-engineering disassembly listing of the sample after it has been unpacked or decrypted.

<file hash>_logicpath.gml. This file is the graphical representation of cross-reference of function calls discovered during dynamic analysis. This is the same as the Logic Path Graph report in the McAfee Advanced Threat Defense web application.
 Use a graph editor such as yWorks yEd Graph Editor to view this file.

• log.zip. This file contains all the run-time log files for all processes affected by the sample during the dynamic analysis. If the sample generated any console output text, the output text messages is captured in the ConsoleOutput.log file zipped up in the log.zip file. Use any regular unzip utility to see the content of all files inside this log.zip file.

• dump.zip. This file contains the memory dump (dump.bin) of binary code of the sample during dynamic analysis. This file is password protected. The password is *virus*.

• dropfiles.zip. This is the same as the Dropped Files report in the **Analysis Results** page of McAfee Advanced Threat Defense web application. The dropfiles.zip file contains all files created or touched by the sample during the dynamic analysis. It is also password protected like dump.zip.

For a detailed explanation of all these files and McAfee Advanced Threat Defense reports, see the *McAfee Advanced Threat Defense Product Guide*.

Manager reports for malware detections

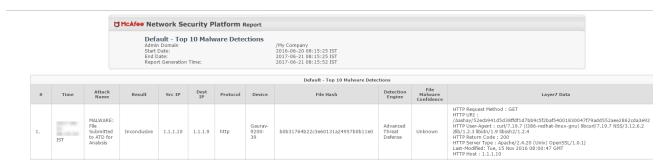
A default Next Generation Report called **Top 10 Malware Detections** provides details of the detected malware. For a given time period, this report shows the alerts raised for the top 10 most frequently downloaded malware in your network. Therefore, for a given file, you can view the results from various malware engines. However, these results are dependent on the Advanced Malware policy configuration for the period of the report.

Task

- 1. In the Manager select Analysis \rightarrow Event Reporting \rightarrow Next Generation Reports.
- 2. From the list of Saved Reports, select Default Top 10 Malware Detections and then click Run.
- 3. Specify the time period for which you want to generate the report in the **Date Options** section.
- 4. Select the output format of the report from the Report Format list.
- 5. Click Run.

/My Compa

The default Top 10 Malware Detections report



The generated report is displayed.

Column definitions

Column	Definition
Time	The time stamp when a malware engine determined the file to be malicious. In other words, this is the time when the
Attack Name	The alert raised by the Sensor for the file.

Column	Definition
Result	The response action taken by the Sensor for the file. For example, the Sensor could have blocked the file download.
Src IP	The source IP address as seen in the traffic for the malware traffic.
Dest IP	The target host that is downloading the file.
Protocol	The L7 protocol involved. This could be HTTP or SMTP.
Device	The Sensor that detected the file download.
File Hash	The MD5 hash value of the file as calculated by the Sensor.
Detection Engine	The malware engine that reported the malware.
File Malware Confidence	The malware score reported by the malware engine.
Layer7 Data	The L7 data associated with the file.

🗹 Note

The admin domain filter in the main **Analysis** page (provided in the left pane) has no impact on the reports generated. The admin domain filter criteria selected for the reports, show data specific to the admin domain selected.

• For information how to use the Next Generation Reports, see McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide.

• You can also generate a User Defined report using all of the above columns. For example, you can generate a User Defined report that reports only very-high severity malware detected by Sensors of a particular domain. You must use **Alert Data** as the **Data Source** when you define the report. For more information on how to generate a User Defined report, see *McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide*.

Integration with McAfee Threat Intelligence Exchange

Organizations face a plethora of security and operational challenges in an attempt to mount an effective defense strategy against today's emerging threats. To effectively combat emerging threats, organizations require security infrastructure that is a blend of behavioral, reputation, and signature-based assessment capabilities on both the network and on endpoints. While each of these security layers might effectively identify threats when working alone, it's important that they work together to share insights, gain knowledge, and adapt in unison to address evolving threats. Time-consuming manual communications between network and endpoint solutions are simply not fast enough to address this requirement. McAfee Threat Intelligence Exchange enables you to use your security infrastructure collaboratively and share file reputation across the network.

🗹 Note

This integration is only available on NS-series and Virtual IPS Sensors.

Why integrate Network Security Platform with Threat Intelligence Exchange?

Currently, users face several challenges when securing a network. The more diverse your network, the larger the operational difficulties, and the harder it is to ensure that your security system is aware of the most recent detections or risks prevalent on the network. Majority of the security administrators today face these challenges.

- Cost of distributing DAT files across all endpoints in the network.
- Inability to customize black, white, and gray policies for your network.
- Impact of security products on network performance and system resources.
- · Need for proactive protection from zero-day malware using reputations, prevalence, and flexible policies.

These difficulties are a result of several devices in the network and the addition of new security systems to address different threats. Network Security Platform protects against threats orchestrated by several file types. To be able to achieve a security framework in which more security systems are able to share security awareness and provide adaptive security, you must have a medium that addresses such communication with ease. Data Exchange Layer is a bidirectional communications framework that enables security intelligence and adaptive security. Threat Intelligence Exchange uses Data Exchange Layer serves as a local repository of file reputations. When enabled, it also acts a proxy to McAfee Global Threat Intelligence.

Benefits of integrating with Threat Intelligence Exchange and Data Exchange Layer

As a product, Threat Intelligence Exchange has been built to offer you the following benefits:

• **Comprehensive threat intelligence**: Security administrators are able to send file hashes of suspicious files to Threat Intelligence Exchange. Threat Intelligence Exchange uses threat intelligence from global data sources, such as Global Threat Intelligence, with local threat intelligence provided by real-time, and historical event data coming from endpoints, gateways, and other security components.

• **Immediate visibility into the presence of advanced targeted attacks**: When file reputation of a file is found as malicious after scanning through a security component such as Advanced Threat Defense, you are able to communicate this information through Data Exchange Layer and dynamically contribute to Threat Intelligence Exchange. Shared insights

provide deeper awareness of threats targeting an organization. Attacks are discovered through the endpoints, gateways, and other security components that act in unison.

• **Proactive threat protection**: Threat information gathered through endpoints and gateways can be propagated quickly through Data Exchange Layer, ensuring all integrated security products proactively immunize against newly detected threats.

• **Lowered cost of ownership**: While improving security, the cost of ownership is lowered by extending existing security detection, prevention, and analytic technology investments to protect your organization as soon as a threat is revealed.

Important terminologies and components

The integration between Network Security Platform, Data Exchange Layer, and Threat Intelligence Exchange comprises several components. These components and their brief descriptions are listed.

• Sensor – Any NS-series or Virtual IPS Sensor running Sensor software version 9.1 or above.

• **Threat Intelligence Exchange server** – It is a repository of file reputation details which security products across the network access. By providing file reputation, it enables a security administrator to take corrective action.

• **McAfee ePO** – A management console for endpoints across the network. The Sensor is configured as an endpoint on the network.

• **McAfee Agent** – A management infrastructure extension which is loaded on an endpoint. An endpoint loaded with McAfee Agent is known as a managed endpoint. In the context of this integration, McAfee ePO considers the Sensor as a managed endpoint.

• **Data Exchange Layer (DXL)** – DXL is a real-time, bidirectional, communications infrastructure which provides the framework that enables context (situational awareness, commands, events, etc.) to be shared between different McAfee products. It is also an adaptive security system of interconnected services that communicate and share information to make real-time, accurate security decisions by individual security products, and as a collective solution. Network, endpoint, database, application, and other security solutions are meant to use DXL to operate as one synchronized, real-time, context aware, and adaptive security system.

• **DXL broker** – A network of DXL brokers (brokers) make up the DXL framework. Brokers act as liaisons between the Sensor and the Threat Intelligence Exchange server. In general, they are responsible for routing messages efficiently from senders to receivers. When the Threat Intelligence Exchange server and DXL brokers are set up, the administrator is prompted for McAfee ePO credentials. When the administrator provides these credentials, the broker registers itself with McAfee ePO. In this way, the McAfee ePO server is aware of every DXL broker in the network.

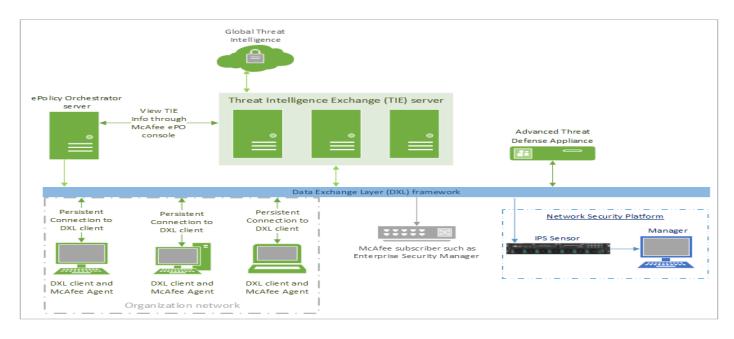
• **DXL client** – A client that is loaded on the Sensor by bundling with McAfee Agent. The Sensor communicates to the DXL framework through the DXL client which consists of broker IP addresses. McAfee ePO considers the Sensor an endpoint. The connection between the DXL client and DXL brokers is a persistent SSL connection, implying that communication between the Sensor and the DXL framework is always open and secure with no time wasted to establish or end a connection.

How the integration works

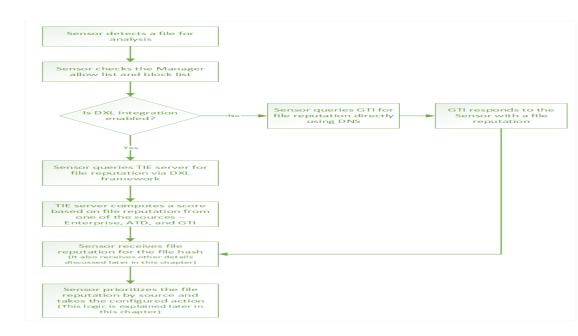
One server or a collection of servers acts as the Threat Intelligence Exchange server. McAfee ePO is provided with details of the Threat Intelligence Exchange server. The Threat Intelligence Exchange server connects to DXL, which facilitates real-time context sharing between products such as Network Security Platform. Within the Network Security Platform, the Sensor is integrated with DXL. McAfee Agent and the DXL client are bundled with the Sensor software. When the Sensor is integrated with DXL and

McAfee ePO, the client receives information about the location of DXL brokers through McAfee ePO. A network of DXL brokers constitutes the DXL framework which connects to the Threat Intelligence Exchange server.

Threat Intelligence Exchange deployment scenario



The integration between Network Security Platform and Threat Intelligence Exchange works in the following sequence:



Threat Intelligence Exchange flow

• It begins when the Sensor detects a file in the network, computes its file hash, and recognizes that it is suspicious or one that warrants analysis. Whether or not a file is suspicious is determined by first looking up the Manager allow list, then the Manager block list.

• If the file hash is not present in either of these lists, the Sensor queries the Threat Intelligence Exchange server with the file hash through the DXL framework if DXL integration is enabled.

•

• If DXL integration is not enabled, the Sensor queries Global Threat Intelligence using a DNS query.

• Threat Intelligence Exchange receives file reputation for a specific file hash from three different sources. Each of these sources is called a **Provider**.

- It receives an **Enterprise** file reputation which is assigned in McAfee ePO by a network administrator.
- It receives an **Advanced Threat Defense** file reputation based on static and dynamic analyses.
- It receives a **Global Threat Intelligence** file reputation.
- The Threat Intelligence Exchange server forwards this file reputation to the Sensor through the DXL framework.

• Depending on the advanced malware policy configuration, the Sensor raises an alert or takes other configured action. The alert displays the file reputation with the following details that are also received from Threat Intelligence Exchange.

• Provider – Enterprise, Advanced Threat Defense, or Global Threat Intelligence. The table lists the details provided by each of these providers.

Provider	Detail – Description				
Enterprise	Total detections – The number of detections this file hash has triggered.				
	Last detection – The last time a detection was t	riggered by this file hash.			
	Distinct file names used by this file – The number of distinct filenames this hash has been detected to be using.				
	Malware confidence observed for this file – As assigned by the network administrator in McAfee ePO.				
Advanced Threat Defense	Overall malware confidence – As computed by Advanced Threat Defense.				
Threat Defense	Individual engine malware confidenceGateway Anti-Malware EngineAnti-Malware EngineSandbox	Malware confidence for each of the individual engines.			

Provider	Detail – Description
Global Threat Intelligence	Malware confidence – As stored in Global Threat Intelligence.

Computing the overall file reputation in the Sensor

Since the Sensor receives file reputation for a file from three different sources, it must choose the one that is most relevant to the security requirements of your network. To do this, the Sensor assigns varying importance to each of the three providers.

- First preference is given to the Enterprise malware confidence since it is specific to this environment.
- Second preference is given to the Advanced Threat Defense since it is configured in your policy and might carry out static and dynamic analysis if they are enabled in the appliance.
- Third preference is given to McAfee GTI

After the Sensor has selected the appropriate score, it is displayed in the Manager. You can view this score in several pages in the Manager. One of the pages where you are able to see it mapped to the appropriate engine is the **Malware Files** page under the **TIE / GTI File Reputation** column. For more details on viewing detected threats in the Manager, refer the *McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide*.

High-level steps to make the integration work

Before you begin

You must make sure that you have

- Set up and configured a McAfee ePO server.
- Set up and configured the Threat Intelligence Exchange server and DXL brokers.

To implement the Threat Intelligence Exchange integration, you must follow a series of steps to make sure that the integration works as expected.

Task

- 1. Log on to the Manager.
- 2. Configure McAfee ePO by providing the appropriate McAfee ePO server IP address and credentials.
- 3. Configure DXL integration either for a domain or for a device.
- 4. Create an advanced malware policy in which TIE / GTI File Reputation is enabled for one or more file types.
- 5. Apply this policy to the Sensor ports you want to use and specify the direction of traffic that is to be monitored with this policy.
- 6. Perform a configuration update on the Sensor.

Results

The setup is ready to be used in a Threat Intelligence Exchange integration.

Enable DXL integration for a domain

Before you begin

Make sure that you have configured the integration with a McAfee ePO server.

DXL is disabled by default for a domain which you can configure. You can later choose whether to use this configuration for each device or override it and use different settings for a device.

To configure DXL integration for a domain, follow these steps.

Task

- 1. Go to Devices \rightarrow <Admin_Domain_Name> \rightarrow Global \rightarrow IPS Device Settings \rightarrow DXL Integration. The Data Exchange Layer (DXL) Integration page appears.
- 2. Select the Enable DXL Integration? checkbox.
- 3. To change McAfee ePO server settings for the Manager, in general, click the **ePO Integration Settings** hyperlink at the topright of the page.
- 4. Click **Save** to confirm your settings.

Data Exchange Layer integration page for a domain

Data Exchange Layer (DXL) Inte	sgration	
		ePO Integration Settings
Enable DXL Integration?	V	
ePO Server IP Address:	10.213.169.206	
ePO Server Port:	8443	
ePO Username:	admin	
Open ePO Console		Save

🗹 Note

To access the McAfee ePO console of the McAfee ePO server mentioned in this page, click the **Open ePO Console** button. Clicking this button takes you to the McAfee ePO logon screen where you need the appropriate credentials to log on.

Results

DXL integration is now enabled for this domain. To use these settings in each device, you need to go to a device and inherit these settings.

Enable DXL integration for a device

Before you begin

Make sure that you have enabled the integration with a McAfee ePO server.

DXL integration is disabled by default for a device. You can enable it to inherit settings from the domain or be independent for the device.

Task

- 1. Go to **Devices** \rightarrow **<Admin_Domain_Name>** \rightarrow **Device** \rightarrow **<Device_Name>** \rightarrow **Setup** \rightarrow **DXL Integration**. The **Data Exchange Layer (DXL) Integration** page appears.
- 2. You have the option to use DXL integration preferences including McAfee ePO server settings used in the domain. To use this option, select the **Inherit Settings?** checkbox.

The remaining options are immediately disabled when you select this option.

- 3. If you have chosen to inherit settings from the domain, click **Save**. If not, proceed to step 4.
- 4. Select the Enable DXL Integration? checkbox.

The McAfee ePO server configuration fields are displayed.

5. Enter the McAfee ePO server IPv4 address.

Data Exchange Layer integration for a device shows settings specific to it

Data Exchange Layer (DXL) Inte	egration		
		<u>999</u>	O Integration Settings
Inherit Settings?			
Enable DXL Integration?			
ePO Server IP Address:	10.213.169.206		
ePO Server Port:	8443		
ePO Username:	admin		
ePO Password:	•••••		
Open ePO Console			Save

- 6. Enter the port that the Sensor must use to communicate with McAfee ePO.
- 7. Enter the credentials the Sensor must use to access McAfee ePO.

4 Integration with McAfee Threat Intelligence Exchange

🗹 Note

The credentials you configure here need not be the same credentials as those entered in the **ePO Integration** page. To review this configuration, click the **ePO Integration Settings** hyperlink at the top-right corner of this page.

8. Click **Save** to confirm your settings.

Results

DXL integration is now enabled with settings specific to this device.

Viewing Threat Intelligence Exchange detection in the Manager

After you have enabled Threat Intelligence Exchange for the Sensor, if you have configured this engine in your advanced malware policy, you will be able to view malware files by this engine in the Manager.

Consider a scenario in which a file is detected by the Sensor. The following sequence illustrates how the Sensor queries Threat Intelligence Exchange and provides the results to be displayed in the Manager. However this is only one of the ways of viewing the results. For more options, see the *McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide*.

- When a file appears on the network, the Sensor computes a file hash and checks the allow list and block list in the Manager. When this file hash is not found in these lists, it gueries Threat Intelligence Exchange through DXL.
- Threat Intelligence Exchange receives the malware confidence for this file hash from **Enterprise**, Advanced Threat Defense, and Global Threat Intelligence and returns the various parameters to the Sensor.
- The Sensor finds that the malware confidence for the file hash is reported as **High** by **Enterprise** and as a result gives the file an overall malware confidence of **High** too.
- You see the malware confidence in the Malware Files page under the TIE / GTI File Reputation column.
- The Sensor also raises a MALWARE: Malicious File Detected by TIE Engine alert.

Malware Files page in the Manager

/My Company > Malware Files

Use this page to view malware files detected on your network.

Tip: Double-click a hash to view matching attacks.			Any Malware Confid	lence	¥	Any Re	esult	¥ L	
Hash			Individual Eng		Engine Confidence				
Actions	Hash	Overall Malware ▼ Confidence	Block	TIE / GTI File Reputation	NSP Ana	NSP Analysis		Gateway Anti-Malware	2
Take action	98b0078451d36e58	Very High			(i) Ver	у Н	igh		
Take action	97787ef68e08f9851	Very High		(i) Very High	(i) Ver	у Н	igh		
Take action	95f5742a9033876e7	Very High			(i) Ver	у Н	igh		

• Clicking the 🕕 icon to view file reputation from each of the three sources.

Threat Intelligence Exchange Engine results

Threat Intel	elligence Exchange Engine Results	×
View the file	reputation results correlated by TIE for each analysis engine.	
Enterprise	Advanced Threat Defense Global Threat Intelligence	
Total Detection	ions:	
Last Detectio	on:	
Distinct File N File:	Names Used by this 1	
Malware Con this File:	nfidences Observed for High	
L		
	Ch	ose

• Or you can click the *MALWARE: Malicious File Detected by TIE Engine* hyperlink to be directed to the **Threat Explorer** with a filter on the alert.

Threat Explorer page with a filter on that alert

/My Company > Thre	at Explorer		?
	Top: 5 🗸 Attacks	Any Direction 🔽 Last 14 days 👻	C
Filter: Attack Nam	MALWARE: Malicious PDF file transfer detected X Add Filter	View Attacks	
Attack Name - MAL	WARE: Malicious PDF file transfer detected	*	
Description:	This alert indicates that a malicious PDF file transfer is detected.	Benign Trigger Probability	
Vulnerability Type:	Not Applicable	Low Block Zone	
Attack Severity:	High	Medium Block as Needed Zone	11
Attack Seventy:	nign	High Info. Low Med. High Cautious Zone	11
Benign Trigger Probability:	Low	Attack Severity	11
Category:	Malware		H
Subcategory:	PDF Emulation		
Possible Effects:	PDFs are widely used business file format, which makes them a cor code when a malicious pdf file is viewed allowing the code to perfor		1
Affected Platforms:	Protocols		
	 Hypertext Transfer Protocol Simple Mail Transfer Protocol 		
✓ Show More			

- Clicking the View Attacks button opens the Attack Log page that shows all alerts for this file hash.
- Double-clicking one of these alerts opens the alert details panel.

• You can view the malware details in the **Details** tab where you see the details of the file hash from each of the providers. On this panel, you notice the correlation, if applicable to that file hash between the provider and the overall malware confidence.

Malware Details panel, Alert Details window

MALWARE: Blacklist	ted File Detected	~ ~
Export -		C
Summary Details	Description	
Malware File		\approx
File Name:	/Sensor_CLI_Tests.doc	
File Hash:	df3f0cf27a19a9ac7831f4f9444aafcd Whitelist Blac	cklist
Malware Name:		
Malware Confidence:	Very High	
Engine:	Manager Blacklist	
Size (bytes):	26624	
Description:		
CVE ID:		
Layer 7		\approx
HTTP Response Content Type:	application/msword	
HTTP Server Type:	Apache/2.0.49 (Fedora) Last-Modified: Tue, 25 Sep 2012 21:2 GMT	9:19
HTTP Return Code:	200	
HTTP Host:	1.1.1.10	
HTTP URI:	/Sensor_CLI_Tests.doc	
HTTP User-Agent:	Wget/1.11.4 (Red Hat modified)	
HTTP Request Method:	GET	

Sensor CLI commands specific to Threat Intelligence Exchange

The NS-series Sensors are provided with CLI commands specific to the Threat Intelligence Exchange.

- Normal mode
 - show tiestats Displays the total requests and responses to file reputation requests and number of file reputation responses per source, the sources being Enterprise score, Advanced Threat Defense, and Global Threat Intelligence.
 - show dxl status Displays whether Data Exchange Layer is enabled or disabled.
- Debug mode

• set ma wakeup port [<1-65536>] - Enables you to change the port used to wake up McAfee Agent through the Sensor CLI.

For more details about these commands, refer to the McAfee Network Security Platform Sensor Reference Guide.

Troubleshooting the integration between Network Security Platform and Threat Intelligence Exchange

The integration between these two products involves several components. Any issue with the integration can be a result of a malfunction in one of these components. The Manager faults mentioned below assist you in troubleshooting this integration.

Manager faults and possible causes

Fault	Severity	Possible causes	Possible solutions
DXL Service is down	Critical	Failed to connect to the ePolicy Orchestrator Server.	 Check the connectivity between the Sensor and McAfee ePO, or check the logs.
		Failed to connect to the Data Exchange Layer.	Check the logs.
		Failed to start the McAfee Agent service.	
		Failed to start the Data Exchange Layer service.	

Integration with McAfee Vulnerability Manager

Vulnerability assessment is the automated process of pro-actively identifying vulnerabilities of computing systems in a network in order to determine security threats to the network. Vulnerability scanner software automates the vulnerability discovery process, by remotely assessing your network, and finding the vulnerabilities in the systems.

McAfee® Network Security Platform provides integration with vulnerability scanners such as McAfee® Vulnerability Manager (formerly Foundstone), and Nessus Security Scanner. You can request remote scans, and use the vulnerability assessment reports from the scanners to determine the relevance of attacks on the hosts.

Vulnerability Manager scan configuration can be done from the root admin domain level or at child admin domain levels. There is an option to inherit configuration settings from the parent domain, or enable separate configuration at the child admin domain level.

Different Vulnerability Manager server settings and scan configurations can be done at the root and child admin domain levels.

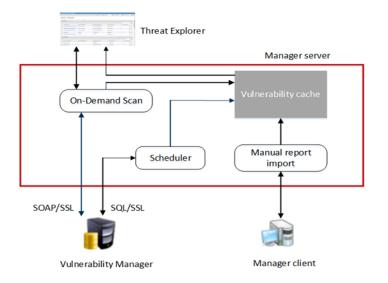
McAfee Network Security Platform - Vulnerability Manager integration

Network Security Platform has been integrated with Vulnerability Manager Enterprise vulnerability scanner.

There are two main components to this enhanced integration.

First, users can schedule the import of Vulnerability Manager scan data into Network Security Platform, to provide automated updating of IPS-event data relevancy. Second, users can initiate a Vulnerability Manager scan of a single IP address from the Vulnerability Scanning option. This provides a simple way for security administrators to access near real-time updates of host vulnerability details, and improved focus on critical events.

The figure below gives an overview of the Network Security Platform-Vulnerability Manager integration.



Network Security Platform-Vulnerability Manager integration

This integration provides the following major functionalities in McAfee® Network Security Manager:

On-demand scan

You can request a Vulnerability Manager scan from Threat Explorer, by selecting the Attacker/Target IP address of the host.

When you request a Vulnerability Manager on-demand scan, the selected host IP address is passed from the Threat Explorer to the Manager web-tier, which connects and establishes trust with the Vulnerability Manager engine. This initiates the scan for the requested endpoint IP address.

The Vulnerability Manager engine scans the host, and provides the vulnerability assessment data to the Manager. This data is processed and stored in the Manager database and have visibility to the recently invoked on-demand scans. For requesting an on-demand scan from Threat Explorer, you need to configure Vulnerability Manager settings in Manager.

If the scan traffic between the Vulnerability Manager server and the hosts being scanned passes through a Sensor monitoring port, the Sensor may consider it as attack traffic and take the corresponding response action such as quarantining the Vulnerability Manager server.

To prevent this:

- Create ACLs to exclude all traffic from the Vulnerability Manager server from attack inspection. For information on ACLs, see Configuring ACL rules, *McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide*.
- If you have configured Quarantine, add the Vulnerability Manager server to the quarantine exceptions list. This prevents the Vulnerability Manager server being quarantined.

Automatic import of Vulnerability Manager reports via the scheduler in Manager

The vulnerability report from Vulnerability Manager database can be imported via the Vulnerability Manager Scheduler in Manager. Reports can be scheduled on a daily or weekly basis. Imported vulnerability data will be stored in the Manager database, and also updated in the *relevancy cache* used for relevancy analysis of attacks.

Manual import of Vulnerability Manager reports via Manager

You can manually import reports from Vulnerability Manager, and store them in your local machine. Manager client passes the imported vulnerability data into the *vulnerability assessment module* in the Manager server. This data is processed and stored in the Manager database in Network Security Platform format.

Relevance analysis of attacks

Once you have imported vulnerability reports into the Manager database, you can determine the vulnerability relevance for the alerts.

Vulnerability Manager installation

Vulnerability Manager and Manager should not be installed on same system. Foundstone Configuration Management (FCM) Agent service is installed by default during the Manager installation, no other component need to be installed on the Manager system.

Vulnerability Manager Enterprise has the following major components:

- Vulnerability Manager Enterprise Manager Which represents the browser-based user interface of the system.
- Scan engine Used to scan hosts for vulnerability assessment.
- Vulnerability Manager database server Is the data repository for Vulnerability Manager Enterprise containing information about organization settings, scan configurations, workgroups, user account information, and scan results.
- Vulnerability Manager Certificate Manager (FCM) Server Hosts the Vulnerability Manager Certificate Management tool used for custom certificates.

In an actual Vulnerability Manager deployment, you can deploy Vulnerability Manager Enterprise Manager, Vulnerability Manager console, one or more FoundScan engines and Vulnerability Manager database.

🗹 Note

For more information on system requirements for different Vulnerability Manager Enterprise deployment scenarios, and setup process for different Vulnerability Manager versions, see *McAfee Network Security Platform Vulnerability Manager Administrator Guide*.

Configuring the Vulnerability Manager servers to use a DNS server

The server(s) used for Vulnerability Manager deployment should be configured to use Domain Name System (DNS) Server. Vulnerability Manager server must be defined as a record within the DNS zone.

Also make sure to configure the client machines used for on-demand scans, to use the DNS Server.

Without the above configurations, the Vulnerability Manager on-demand scans from Threat Explorer will result in error, due to incorrect name resolution.

🗹 Note

The product names, "Foundstone", and "Vulnerability Manager" refer to the same product.

Menu options for Vulnerability Manager configuration

To configure Vulnerability Manager settings in the Manager , select **Manager** \rightarrow **<Admin Domain Name>** \rightarrow **Integration** \rightarrow **Vulnerability Assessment** or **Manager** \rightarrow **<Child Admin Domain Name>** \rightarrow **Integration** \rightarrow **Vulnerability Assessment** (for performing this action from root or child admin domains).

Configure Vulnerability Manager settings in Manager

Before you begin

Disabling CBC protection allows the integration. Cipher block chain (CBC) protection is an operating mode in cryptography. Java uses CBC protection in SSL connections to counter the Beast Exploit against SSL/TLS (BEAST) threat, and a security vulnerability in an SSL socketFactory method. This security fix was introduced in Java version 6u29, which also introduced a bug that prevents SSL connections to SQL Server 2008. As a result, CBC protection interferes in the integration between the Manager and MS SQL database of Vulnerability Manager. Therefore, before you proceed with your configuration of Vulnerability Manager in the Manager, disable this feature by performing the steps below:

- 1. Locate the tms.bat file in C:\Program Files (x86)\McAfee\Network Security Manager\App\bin.
- 2. Open the file in a notepad application.

Text to disable CBC protection in Java

- 3. Scroll to locate the text displayed in the image as 0
- 4. Once you have located the text, append it with the following entry:

set JAVA_OPTS=%JAVA_OPTS% -Djsse.enableCBCProtection=false

The text must be entered as displayed in the image as (2).

- 5. Save and the close the file.
- 6. Reboot the Manager.

Once the Manager is back up you may proceed with the configuration.

The Vulnerability Manager configuration settings allow Manager to connect directly to the Scan engine servers and database.

You can configure the settings in two ways:

Task

- 1. Manually navigating the configuration screens.
- 2. Using the Vulnerability Manager Configuration Wizard

Manually navigating the configuration screens

Following steps are essential for manually configuring Vulnerability Manager settings (in the given order):

- Enabling Vulnerability Manager scanning First step required for successfully using the Vulnerability Manager ondemand scan functionality from Threat Explorer.
- Configuring Vulnerability Manager database settings This step is essential for Manager to connect to the Vulnerability Manager database server, and import the required information from the database.

- Configuring Vulnerability Manager Server settings Manager uses information from the Vulnerability Manager server to initiate Vulnerability Manager scans from Threat Explorer.
- Adding Vulnerability Manager scan configurations If the IP address of the scanned host falls within any of the scan configurations added to Manager, that scan configuration is used for on-demand scan of the host from Threat Explorer. This step completes the configuration settings for Vulnerability Manager in Manager.

Using the Vulnerability Manager Configuration Wizard

The Vulnerability Manager Configuration Wizard helps you to navigate the screens in the desired sequence.

Select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Vulnerability Scanning \rightarrow Summary.

OR

$$\label{eq:analytical_states} \begin{split} \text{Manager} \to & \mathsf{Child} \ \text{Admin Domain Name} \to & \mathsf{Integration} \to & \mathsf{Vulnerability} \ \text{Assessment} \to & \mathsf{MVM} \to & \mathsf{Vulnerability} \ \text{Scanning} \to & \mathsf{Summary} \ \text{and} \ \text{click} \ \text{Run Configuration} \ \text{Wizard} \ \text{to} \ \text{start} \ \text{the Vulnerability} \ \text{Manager Configuration} \ \text{Wizard}. \end{split}$$

Vulnerability Manager Summary sub-tab

Domain: /My Company	/My Company > Integration > Vulner	ability Assessment > MVM > Vu	Inerability Scanning > Summary	?
✓ Updating	Enable integration with McAfee Vulnerabili	ty Manager (MVM) to initiate vulnera	ability scans from the Manager.	
Download Signature Sets Download Callback Detectors	Summary			
Download Device Software Manual Import Messages from McAfee > Automatic Updating	Status Allow Vulnerability Scans to be Run from NSM?	Disabled	Run Configuration Wizard	
Users and Roles	Database Settings			
 Setup Integration 	Server Name or IP Address	n/a		
GTI	Server Port:	n/a		
MLC HIP	SSL Type:	n/a		
HP Network Automation	Database Name:	n/a		
⊳ ePO	User Name:	n/a		
 Vulnerability Assessment Non-MVM Report Import 	Logon Domain:	n/a		
 MVM Vulnerability Scanning 	Vulnerability Manager Server Settin	105		
Summary Enable	Vulnerability Manager Server Version:	n/a		
Database API Server	User Name:	n/a		
Scans Troubleshooting	Scan List			
Alert Relevance	No Vulnerability Manager scan configu	rations defined		
Reporting				

Configuring Vulnerability Manager Settings in the Secondary Manager

If you have an MDR setup, before you proceed with your configuration of Vulnerability Manager in the Secondary Manager, perform the steps below:

🗹 Note

Ensure that the Secondary Manager is in standby mode.

Task

- 1. Locate the tms.bat file in C:\Program Files (x86)\McAfee\Network Security Manager\App\bin.
- 2. Open the file in a notepad application.

Text to disable CBC protection in Java



- 3. Scroll to locate the text displayed in the image as 1
- 4. Once you have located the text, append it with the following entry:

set JAVA_OPTS=%JAVA_OPTS% -Djsse.enableCBCProtection=false

The text must be entered as displayed in the image as (2).

- 5. Save and close the file.
- 6. Reboot the Secondary Manager.
- 7. Make the Secondary Manager active by clicking **Force Switch** in the **Manager** → **<Admin Domain Name>** → **Setup** → **MDR** page.
- 8. Start the FCM agent service. From the Windows **Start** button, click **Run** and open **Services**. You can find the **Found stone Configuration Management (FCM) Agent**.
- 9. Click the **Start** button (**P**) to start the FCM Agent service.
- 10. In the Manager, select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Vulnerability Scanning \rightarrow API Server.

The **Retrive MVM Certificate** option is enabled.

11. Click **Retrive MVM Certificate** to import the client certificates into the Manager keystore.

Use Vulnerability Manager configuration wizard

You can use the Vulnerability Manager Configuration Wizard for configuring Vulnerability Manager settings from Manager.

Task

- Select Manager → <Admin Domain Name> → Integration → Vulnerability Assessment → MVM → Vulnerability
 Scanning → Summary or Manager → <Child Admin Domain Name> → Integration → Vulnerability Assessment →
 MVM → Vulnerability Scanning → Summary to perform this action from root or child admin domains.
- 2. In the Summary page, click Run Configuration Wizard.
- 3. The wizard displays the following pages in order:
 - Enable
 - Database Settings
 - Vulnerability Manager Server Settings
 - Added Vulnerability Manager Scan Configurations
 - a. Use **Next >** or **< Back** buttons to navigate through the pages.
 - b. There are four configuration steps in total. Select **Finish** at the end of the fourth step.

Enable Vulnerability Manager integration at the admin domain level

Vulnerability Manager integration can be enabled both at the root and child admin domain levels.

Enabling Vulnerability Manager integration is the first step in configuring the Vulnerability Manager from Manager.

Task

 Select Manager → <Admin Domain Name> → Integration → Vulnerability Assessment → MVM → Vulnerability Scanning → Enable.

The **Enable** page is displayed.

2. Select **Yes** for the **Allow Vulnerability Scans to be Initiated from the Manager?** option to enable integration of Vulnerability Manager in the Manager.

Enable area

/My Company > Integration > V	ulnerability	/ Assessment > MVM > Vulnerability Scanning > Enable	?
Enable			
Use this page to allow vulnerability	scans to be	initiated against an IP address from within the Manager.	
Allow Vulnerability Scans to be Initiated from the Manager?	• Yes	O No	
			Save

3. Click Save.

Enable Vulnerability Manager integration at the child admin domain level

You can enable Vulnerability Manager integration at the child admin domain level in the Manager. To do so perform the following steps.

Task

1. Select Manager → <Child Admin Domain Name> → Integration → Vulnerability Assessment → MVM → Vulnerability Scanning → Enable.

The **Enable** page is displayed.

Enable page in child admin domain level

2. Select **Yes** or **Inherit Settings**? for the **Allow Vulnerability Scans to be Initiated from the Manager**? option to enable integration or inherit settings made in the parent admin domain.

/My Company/ Child Domain > 1	(ntegration	> Vulner	ability Assessment > MVM > Vulnerability Scanning > Enable	?
Enable				
Use this page to allow vulnerability scans	to be initiat	ed against	an IP address from within the Manager.	
Allow Vulnerability Scans to be Initiated from the Manager?	O Yes	O No	Inherit Settings	
			Sa	ave

3. Click Save.

Update successful message

ttings successfully saved					
able					
se this page to allow vulnerability sc	ans to be initiat	ed against	an IP address from within the	Manager.	
Allow Vulnerability Scans to be Initiated from the Manager?	O Yes	O No	Inherit Settings		
					Sav
Note					

By default all child admin domains inherit the Vulnerability Manager configuration settings from its parent domain.

The screen is refreshed, and a message that the changes have been successfully saved is displayed.

Configure Vulnerability Manager database settings

The second essential step in Vulnerability Manager configuration is configuring the Vulnerability Manager database settings.

Using these settings, Manager connects to the Vulnerability Manager database to get relevance information, scan configuration details, scan engine details, and vulnerability data for scanned hosts. The required data is fetched directly from the Vulnerability Manager database using stored procedures specific to the Manager.

Ý Tip

Make sure that you have enabled Vulnerability Manager integration before configuring Vulnerability Manager Database Settings.

Task

1. Select Manager → <Admin Domain Name> → Integration → Vulnerability Assessment → MVM → Vulnerability Scanning → Database Settings.

Database sub-tab

/My Company > Integration > Vulnerability As	sessment > MVM > Vulnerability Scanning > Da	atabase Settings	
Use this page to specify the MVM database settings	to be used by the Manager.		
Note: The settings on this page are shared. They an initiate a vulnerability scan (vulnerability scanning).	re used for both vulnerability scan results import (act	ive alert relevance analysis only - not re	equired for passive) and to
Tip: The login account below must be a member of	the db_owner role for the MVM database.		
Fields marked with an asterisk $(*)$ are required.			
Database Settings			
Server Name or IP Address		*	
SQL Server Instance Type:	Default Instance Specific Instance		
Instance Name:			
Database Type:	Default 🔻		
Server Port:	1433	*	
SSL Type:	Require v *		
Database Name:	Faultline	*	
Authentication Type:	SQL ¥		
User Name:	sa	*	
Password:		*	
			Test Connection Save

- 2. In **Database Settings** window, enter **Server Name or IP Address** of the Vulnerability Manager database.
- 3. Select the **Database Type**. You can choose **Default** database or a **Custom** database.
 - When you choose **Database Type** as **Default**, note that **Database Settings** window displays the following default values for three fields as given below:
 - Server Port as 1433,
 - SSL Type as Require, and
 - Database Name as Faultline.
 - When the **Database Type** is selected as **Custom**, you can enter custom values in **Server Port**, **SSL Type** and **Database Name** fields.

If you select the **Default** option, go to step 7. If you select **Custom**, proceed with the next step.

- 4. Enter Server Port for the Vulnerability Manager database server.
- 5. Select **SSL Type**.

SSL type	Description
Off	SSL is not requested or used; this is the default.
Request	SSL is requested; if the server does not support it, then a plain connection is used.
Require	SSL is requested; if the server does not support it, then an exception is thrown.

SSL type	Description
Authenticate	Same as Require, except that the Vulnerability Manager server's certificate is signed by a trusted Certifying Authority (for example, VeriSign or DigiCert).

- 6. Enter the name of the Vulnerability Manager database server in **Database Name**.
- Next, you can select three different authentication type for logging into Vulnerability Manager database SQL, Windows Domain, or Windows Workgroup.

In all these authentication types, **User Name** and **Password** refer to those of the Vulnerability Manager database server that is used in the configuration.

- In the case of SQL Authentication,
 - Enter User Name.
 - Enter **Password**.
- · In the case of Windows Domain Authentication,
 - Enter User Name.
 - Enter **Password**.
 - Enter Logon Domain.

🗹 Note

Logon Domain represents the network domain for the Windows NT system. This field is exclusively for Windows Domain Authentication.

- In the case of Windows Workgroup,
 - Enter User Name.
 - Enter **Password**.
 - Enter Server Name of the Windows Workgroup server.

8. Click **Test Connection** to check the availability of Vulnerability Manager database connection. The success or failure in connectivity is displayed as a message in the **Database Settings** page.

🗹 Note

The logon credentials (username and password) for both type of authentications should be given db_owner access rights in the Vulnerability Manager database. This is essential for Manager to establish connection with Vulnerability Manager database, and automatically install stored procedures in the Vulnerability Manager database.

🗹 Note

Note that when Vulnerability Manager database settings are configured for the first time, Manager automatically installs the Vulnerability Manager database with required tables and stored procedures that are used for retrieving information.

Configure Vulnerability Manager server settings

The third essential step in Vulnerability Manager configuration is configuring the Vulnerability Manager Server settings.

The Manager needs to connect to the Vulnerability Manager Server to access the Scan engine.

Scan engine is the component of Vulnerability Manager system that scans the hosts in your network for vulnerabilities.

Network Security Platform-Vulnerability Manager integration supports three versions of Vulnerability Manager engine: 6.8, 7.0, and 7.5. In the Network Security Platform Manager, configuration settings for the scan engine include the engine version and logon credentials to the scan engine server.

Ý Tip

Before configuring **Vulnerability Manager Server Settings**, you should enable Vulnerability Manager integration and configure Vulnerability Manager database settings.

Below are the high level steps for successfully configuring the server settings:

- Before saving the server settings, make sure to provide full access rights to the user account used to run the Manager service. In case the required permissions are not provided, the **Failed to save settings** error appears.
- Start the FCM Agent Service before retrieving the MVM certificate.
- When changing the server settings, restart the FCM Agent Service even if the service is already running.

To configure the Vulnerability Manager server settings, do the following:

Task

 Select Manager → <Admin Domain Name> → Integration → Vulnerability Assessment → MVM → Vulnerability Scanning → API Server.

The Vulnerability Manager Server Settings page appears.

- 2. Select Engine Version as 6.8, 7.0, or 7.5.
- 3. Enter the Server Name or IP Address.
- 4. Enter the **Server Port**, **User Name** and **Password** for the Vulnerability Manager server.

Vulnerability Manager Server Settings area

/My Company > Integration > Vulnerability Assessment > MVM > Vulnerability Scanning > API Server

The Manager uses the scan engine information and credentials below to initiate vulnerability scans.

Note: The MVM user account below must have administrative (Full Access) rights to all scans you intend to initiate from the Manager. Fields marked with an asterisk (*) are required.

Vulnerability Manager Serve	Settings		
Engine Version:	7.5 🗸 *		
Server Name or IP Address:	10.000.075.078	*	
Server Port:	3800	*	
User Name:	administrator	*	
Password:	•••••	*	
		Retrieve MVM Certificate	Save Test Connection

🗹 Note

Username and password entered here should have full access rights in the Vulnerability Manager server. This is essential for successfully initiating Vulnerability Manager on-demand scans from Threat Explorer.

- 5. Click Save .
- 6. Start the FCM Agent service. Click Retrieve MVM Certificate to retrieve the MVM certificate.

🗹 Note

7.0 and 7.5 scan engines support only custom certificates.

7. Click Test Connection to check the availability of Vulnerability Manager server connection.

Update permissions for the integration

The Manager must update the Windows registry for a proper integration. However, the user account used to run Manager service does not have permissions to write to the Windows registry by default. For updating the permissions:

Task

- 1. On the server running the Manager, run regedit.exe.
- 2. Select My Computer \rightarrow HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE \rightarrow SOFTWARE.
- 3. Right-click and select **Permissions**.
- 4. Add the user account used to run the Manager service. Allow full permission for this folder. Click Apply and OK.

?

Updating permissions

SAM	 Name 	Туре	Data	
SECURITY	(Default)	REC		
SOFTWARE		Permis	ssions for SOFTWARE	
- 🔰 ATI Technologies		Security		
Classes		Security		
🎍 Clients		Group or user names:		
🖳 🌽 Macromedia		See CF	REATOR OWNER	
🖳 🌽 Martin Prikryl		🔐 S`	YSTEM	
		Administrators (WIN-ULK55BLE17U\Administrators)		
MozillaPlugins		States (WIN-ULK55RLE17U\Users)		
Policies				
RegisteredApplications				
				Add Remove
Wow6432Node			sions for CREATOR	
· → → Adobe		OWNE	R	Allow Deny
		Full (Control	
		Rea	d	
		Spec	cial permissions	
FCM				
E Foundscan				
+ JavaSoft			ecial permissions or advar	nced settings, Advanced
JreMetrics		click A	dvanced.	
🗄 🚺 Macromedia		Learns	about access control and	permissions
🗄 🚺 Martin Prikryl				
🕀 🛺 Microsoft			ΟΚ	Cancel Apply
🗄 📲 Mozilla				

🗹 Note

Changes take effect immediately and a restart is not required.

5. Go back to the API Settings page in the Manager. Click Save.

Save Vulnerability Manager settings

To save the Vulnerability Manager server settings:

Task

1. In the Manager, select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Vulnerability Scanning \rightarrow API Server.

The Vulnerability Manager Server Settings page appears.

- 2. Configure the following details:
 - Engine Version— The 7.5 version of Vulnerability Manager used
 - Server Name or IP Address— The IP address of the Vulnerability Manager server.
 - Server Port— The server port number.

🗹 Note

You can change the default port number.

- **User Name** The user name assigned to the user having the full rights to all the scans initiated from the Threat Explorer.
- **Password** The password associated with the username above.
- 3. Click Save.

API Server page

/My Company > Integration > Vulnerability Assessment > MVM	I > Vulnerability Scanning > API Server ?				
The Manager uses the scan engine information and credentials below to initiate vulnerability scans.					
Note: The MVM user account below must have administrative (Full Access) rights to all scans you intend to initiate from the Manager.					
Fields marked with an asterisk (*) are required.					
Vulnerability Manager Server Settings					
Engine Version: 7.5 🗸 *					
Server Name o Before communication with the Vulnerability Manager	server can be established:				
1. Start the Foundstone Configuration Management Agent service on the Network Security Manager server. 2. Press the Retrieve MVM Certificate button on this page.					
User Name:					
User Name:					
Password:	OK				
	Retrieve MVM Certificate Save Test Connection				

When the API Server settings is saved, some of the settings like Server IP address and Port settings are updated into Windows Registry. These settings are required for the Foundstone Configuration Management (FCM) Agent Service to communicate with the Foundstone Configuration Management Server.

4. A pop-up opens with the message to start the Foundstone Configuration Management Agent Service. Click **OK**.

🗹 Note

Foundstone and Vulnerability Manager refer to the same product.

Start the FCM agent service

Start the FCM Agent service after updating the permissions for the Windows Registry.

Task

- 1. From the Windows Start button, click Run and open services.msc.
- 2. You can find Foundstone Configuration Management (FCM) Agent here.

Services page

le Action View	Help					
• 🔿 📰 🔄 .	o 🗈 🛛 🖬 🕩 🗉 II Ib					
Services (Local)	😋 Services (Local)					
	Foundstone Configuration	Name 🔶	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On As
	Management Agent	Application Information	Facilitates the running of interac		Manual	Local Syst
		Application Layer Gateway Service	Provides support for 3rd party p		Manual	Local Serv
	Stop the service	Application Management	Processes installation, removal,		Manual	Local Sys
	Restart the service	Background Intelligent Transfer Service	Transfers files in the background	Started	Manual	Local Sys
		Base Filtering Engine	The Base Filtering Engine (BFE) i	Started	Automatic	Local Ser
	Description:	Certificate Propagation	Copies user certificates and root	Started	Manual	Local Sys
	Provides configuration and updates for all locally installed Foundstone Enterprise	CNG Key Isolation	The CNG key isolation service is		Manual	Local Sys
	software components.	COM+ Event System	Supports System Event Notificati	Started	Automatic	Local Ser
		COM+ System Application	Manages the configuration and t		Manual	Local Sys
		Computer Browser	Maintains an updated list of com		Disabled	Local Sys
		Credential Manager	Provides secure storage and ret		Manual	Local Sys
		Cryptographic Services	Provides four management servi	Started	Automatic	Network
		DCOM Server Process Launcher	The DCOMLAUNCH service launc	Started	Automatic	Local Svs
		Desktop Window Manager Session Manager	Provides Desktop Window Mana	Started	Automatic	Local Sys
		O DHCP Client	Registers and updates IP addres	Started	Automatic	Local Ser
		Diagnostic Policy Service	The Diagnostic Policy Service en	Started	Automatic (D	Local Ser
		Diagnostic Service Host	The Diagnostic Service Host is us	Dearcoa	Manual	Local Ser
		Diagnostic System Host	The Diagnostic System Host is us		Manual	Local Sys
		Disk Defragmenter	Provides Disk Defragmentation C		Manual	Local Sys
		Distributed Link Tracking Client	Maintains links between NTFS fil	Started	Automatic	Local Sys
		Distributed Transaction Coordinator	Coordinates transactions that sp	Started	Automatic (D	Network
		DNS Client	The DNS Client service (dnscach	Started	Automatic	Network
		Encrypting File System (EFS)	Provides the core file encryption	Startea	Manual	Local Sys
		Extensible Authentication Protocol	The Extensible Authentication Pr		Manual	Local Sys
		Foundstone Configuration Management Agent		Started	Automatic	Local Sys
		Supervision Discovery Provider Host	The FDPHOST service hosts the	Started	Manual	Local Ser
		Supervision Discovery Resource Publication	Publishes this computer and reso		Manual	Local Ser
		Group Policy Client	The service is responsible for ap	Started	Automatic	Local Sys
		Health Key and Certificate Management	Provides X.509 certificate and k	Startea	Manual	Local Sys
		Human Interface Device Access	Enables generic input access to		Manual	Local Sys
		IKE and AuthIP IPsec Keving Modules	The IKEEXT service hosts the Int	Started	Automatic	Local Sys
		Interactive Services Detection	Enables user notification of user	503,080	Manual	Local Sys
		Internet Connection Sharing (ICS)	Provides network address transl		Disabled	Local Sys
		Internet connection sharing (ICS)	Provides tunnel connectivity usin	Started	Automatic	Local Sys
		IP Helper	Internet Protocol security (IPsec	Started	Manual	Network :

3. Click the **Start** button () to start the FCM Agent service.

After the FCM Agent Service is successfully started, the SSHStatuscache and Statuscache keys are pushed to Agent software from HKLM\Software\wow6432Node\Foundstone location, with a slight delay of 30 to 40 seconds. The two keys should appear in the registry before proceeding to retrieving the MVM certificate.

 Select Manager → <Admin Domain Name> → Integration → Vulnerability Assessment → MVM → Vulnerability Scanning → API Server.

The **Retrive MVM Certificate** option is enabled.

5. Click **Retrive MVM Certificate** to import the client certificates into the Manager keystore.

Vulnerability Manager Server Settings area

/My Company > Integration > Vulnerability Assessment > MVM > Vulnerability Scanning > API Server ?					
The Manager uses the scan engine information and credentials below to initiate vulnerability scans.					
Note: The MVM user account below must have administrative (Full Access) rights to all scans you intend to initiate from the Manager.					
Fields marked with an asterisk (*) are required.					
Vulnerability Manager Server Settings					
Engine Version:	7.5 🗸 *				
Server Name or IP Address:	100 2000 1790 1790	*			
Server Port:	3800	*			
User Name:	administrator	*			
Password:	*****	*			

Key considerations

Note the following:

- It is no longer required to run the Foundstone Certificate Management tool in the FCM Server. You can copy the client certificates and passphrase to a location in the Manager server.
 - When this version of the Manager is installed or upgraded, the FCM Agent software is installed as a service on the Manager server. This Agent software connects to the Foundstone Configuration Management server and automatically retrieves the client certificates into the Manager Server.

Retrieve MVM Certificate

Save

Test Connection

- It is no longer required to run the **FSCertImport.bat** file on the Manager server to import Vulnerability Manager Client certificates into the Manager keystore.
 - · Click Retrieve MVM Certificate to import client certificates in the Vulnerability Manager Server Settings page.

Add Vulnerability Manager scan configurations

The fourth and final step in Vulnerability Manager configuration is adding Vulnerability Manager scan configurations.

You can define Scan Configurations (also known as scans) in the Vulnerability Manager system for different host IP address ranges, and then add them to Manager.

When you add a scan configuration to the Manager, a check on whether this scan configuration exists in the Vulnerability Manager database is done. If the scan configuration exists, then it is saved in the Manager database. The scan configuration is also updated in the Manager cache. Manager cache contains the scan configuration ID and the IP address ranges defined in the scan configuration. When the user requests for an on-demand scan of a host IP address from Threat Explorer, the appropriate scan configuration ID is selected. Then, the scan configuration associated with the scan configuration ID is used to scan the host IP address.

🗹 Note

Important pre-requisite: You need to run the scan configuration defined in the Vulnerability Manager engine once, before adding a scan configuration to Manager. Each scan configuration defined in the Vulnerability Manager is associated with a Vulnerability Manager engine. When you run the scan configuration for the first time at the Vulnerability Manager side, the Vulnerability Manager engine in which the scan configuration was last executed, gets associated with that scan configuration. This step is essential for successfully adding the scan configuration to Manager.

🏹 Tip

It is recommended that you define a common *user* in the *organizations* defined in the Vulnerability Manager side. Ensure that this user has full access permissions to Vulnerability Manager engine. Through this user, you can conveniently access various scan configurations defined in all the organizations in Vulnerability Manager. This will ease the access of scan configurations defined in Vulnerability Manager. For more information about organizations and scan configurations, see Working with Scans, *McAfee Network Security Platform Foundstone Administrator Guide.* The product name "Foundstone", and "Vulnerability Manager " refer to the same product.

Task

 Select Manager → <Admin Domain Name> → Integration → Vulnerability Assessment → MVM → Vulnerability Scanning → Scans.

Added Vulnerability Manager Scans dialog

/My Company > Integration > Vulnerability Assessment > MVM > Vulnerability Scanning > Scans

Once a scan configuration has met the <u>prerequisites</u>, it can be added here. Depending on which integration options have been enabled, the NSM uses the listed scan configurations in the following ways:

- 1. To determine which vulnerabilities should be tested when a scan is initiated from within the Manager. (If none of the added scan configurations contains the IP address in question, the default scan configuration is used instead.)
- 2. To determine which scan results should be imported and used as a factor when calculating alert relevance.

Note: The results of vulnerability scans initiated from the Manager are also automatically used to calculate alert relevance.

Added Vulnerability Manager Scan Configurations

	Organization or Workgroup	Scan Name	Description
	NSPQA	<u>NSP 169 17 1 (</u> default)	
	NSPQA	<u>NSP 17.x 169.x</u>	

New Delete

The Added Vulnerability Manager Scan Configurations page appears.

🗹 Note

You can delete individual scan configurations or multiple scan configurations from the **Added Vulnerability Manager Scan Configurations** page. Click **Delete**, to delete a scan configuration. For deleting multiple scan configurations, select the required checkboxes, and then click **Delete**.

2. To add a scan configuration, click New.

Add a Scan dialog

Add a Scan			\times
Note: Before adding a scan configuration to Network Security Manager, it must first be activated from the McAfee Vulnerability Enterprise Manager user interface at least once.			
Fields marked with an asterisk	(*) are required.		
Add a Scan			
Organization or Workgroup:	McAfee Engineering Center	*	
Scan Name:	Lab1	*	
Set As Default?	\checkmark		
Description:	All systems located in the lab	.#	
		Save Cano	cel

The **Add a Scan** window allows you to enter scan configurations, equivalent to already defined configurations in the Scan engine for the different host IP address ranges.

- 3. Enter the **Organization or Workgroup** name.
- 4. Provide a name for the scan.
- 5. Select Set As Default? if you want to set this scan configuration as the default configuration.
- 6. If necessary, enter a description of the scan configuration in **Description**.
- 7. Select **Save**. The **Added Vulnerability Manager Scan Configurations** page displays all the scan configurations that are added to Manager.

The configuration steps for Vulnerability Manager are complete at this point.

View Vulnerability Manager configuration details

You can view the Vulnerability Manager configuration details in Manager. To do so perform the following steps.

Select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Vulnerability Scanning \rightarrow Summary to perform this action from root or child admin domains. The Summary page appears.

Summary page

le integration with McAfee Vulnerability	Manager (MVM) to initiate vulr	nerability scans from the Manager.
nmary		
atus		
Allow Vulnerability Scans to be Run from NSM?	Enabled	Run Configuration Wizard
atabase Settings		
Server Name or IP Address		
Server Port:	1433	
SSL Type:	Require	
Database Name:	Faultline	
User Name:	sa	
Logon Domain:	n/a	
ulnerability Manager Server Setting	5	
Vulnerability Manager Server Version:	7.5	
User Name:	administrator	
can List		
NSPQA / NSP_169_17_1 (default)		
NSPOA / NSP 17.x 169.x		

This page shows the details of Vulnerability Manager configuration such as status of Vulnerability Manager scan enabled/ disabled; database settings, Vulnerability Manager Server settings, and list of scan configurations added to the Manager.

Note that the changes saved in all the pages related to Vulnerability Manager configuration are reflected in **Summary** page. When you click on the individual links, you are re-directed to the respective pages.

You can also configure Vulnerability Manager settings using Run Configuration Wizard in Summary page.

Import non-vulnerability manager report

The vulnerability assessment scan results of an admin domain can be imported in an XML format from a location in the Manager's file system. You can reformat the scan results and save it to a specific location, so that the Manager automatically imports the result to be later used to determine alert relevance.

🗹 Note

The non-MVM report import feature is disabled if Alert Relevance feature is disabled in the Manager.

Task

 Select Manager → <Admin Domain Name> → Integration → Vulnerability Assessment → Non-MVM Report Import. The Non-MVM Report Import page is displayed.

My Company > Integration > V	ulnerability Assessment > Non-MVM Report Import	
tote: Each admin domain manages its vulnerability assessment results individually. That is, there is no inheritance for this feature, so the results imported into this domain will be used to analy he relevance of alerts generated by devices in this domain only.		ill be used to analyz
on-MVM Report Import		
Enable Automatic Import?		
Import Settings		~
Report File Location:	Default Custom	
Report File Name:	C:\Program Files\McAfee\Network Security Manager\App\temp\VA\Import.xml	
	The Manager imports results from the above report file at the scheduled import frequency. Details:	
	1. The above file must be located on the <u>Manager</u> file system.	
	 Relative file names are not permitted. (Only absolute file names are allowed.) The file must adhere to the McAfee XML format: 	
	Sample XML File	
	<u>McAfee DTD File</u>	
	4. Only results based on IP address are eligible for import. (Results based on hostname are ignored.)	
Import Frequency:	Weekly V Sunday V at 11:30 PM V	
Generate Informational Faults:		
		Import Now
Last Import		~
Time:		
Result:		
IPs Added / Updated / Ignored:		
Domain Statistics		2
Current IPs Tracked:	0 ()	
	Pureo	Current Results

2. Select the **Enable Automatic Import?** checkbox.

🗹 Note

By default, this option is not selected.

The **Import Settings** panel is displayed with the following fields.

Option	Definition	
Report File Location	Default : Specifies that the file to be imported is available in the default local location. Custom : Specify a unique file to be imported for each admin domain.	
Report File Name	This text field displays the default location path of the report file to be imported.	
	Note: When the Default option is selected for the Report File Location this text field is disabled and so cannot be modified. When the Custom option is selected, this text field is enabled and you can specify a unique file name for the specific active directory.	
	In an enterprise environment, the default file can be used across all admin domains. In environments such as MSSP, where a unique active directory is created for each customer, a unique file can be used for each active directory.	

Option	Definition
Sample XML File	Click on the Sample XML File hyperlink to view the sample file located in the Manager file system, which is in the same directory as the default import file. This sample file can be used as a file template for the XML file.
McAfee DTD File	Click on the McAfee DTD File hyperlink to view the GenVulReportFlat.dtd located in the Manager file system. It provides the details of the XML rules for the XML format.
Import Frequency	 To configure the frequency of import, select the following options: Weekly: For weekly import, select the day (Example:Sunday) from the drop-down list, and select the weekly time for import from the at drop-down list. Daily: For a daily report, select the daily time for import from the at drop-down list.
	Note: The import frequency coincides with the server time.
Generate Informational Faults	Select the Generate Informational Faults to generate an informational fault when the import attempt is successful.

3. Click **Import Now** to import the results from the specified results file location.

Sample XML file

The sample XML file can be used an XML file template for importing the scan result. The sample XML file contains the following root elements.

- <Report Summary> Contains the summary of time and security vulnerability of the scanned vulnerability report
- **<Host Summary>** Contains the summary of the host in the scanned vulnerability report
- **<HostVulnerabilities>** Contains the host vulnerability details of each vulnerability

The following table explains the list of child elements under each root element.

XML child elements	Description
<time summary=""></time>	

XML child elements	Description
<report time=""></report>	The date when the scan was performed.
	Example: 09.10.2015 (MM.DD.YYYY)
<scanstarttime></scanstarttime>	The starting time of the scan.
	Example: 09.10.2015 (MM.DD.YYYY) 18:08:17 (HH:MM:SS)
	Note: The scan start time coincides with the server time.
<scanendtime></scanendtime>	The end time of the scan.
	Example: 09.10.2015 (MM.DD.YYYY) 18:49:37 (HH:MM:SS)
<scanelapsedtime></scanelapsedtime>	The duration of the time elapsed since the scan was performed.
	Example: 0 day(s) 00:41:19 (HH:MM:SS)
<securityvulnerability summary=""></securityvulnerability>	
<totalnumberofvulnerabilities></totalnumberofvulnerabilities>	The total number of vulnerabilities found in the scan.
<highseverityvulnerabilities></highseverityvulnerabilities>	The total number of high severity vulnerabilities found during the scan.
<mediumseverityvulnerabilities></mediumseverityvulnerabilities>	The total number of medium severity vulnerabilities found during the scan.
<lowseverityvulnerabilities></lowseverityvulnerabilities>	The total number of low severity vulnerabilities found during the scan.
<informationalvulnerabilities></informationalvulnerabilities>	The total number of linformational vulnerabilities found during the scan.
<host info=""></host>	
<hostip></hostip>	IP address of the host.
<highseverityvulnerabilities></highseverityvulnerabilities>	High severity vulnerabilities found in the host
<mediumseverityvulnerabilities></mediumseverityvulnerabilities>	Medium severity vulnerabilities found in the host

XML child elements	Description
<lowseverityvulnerabilities></lowseverityvulnerabilities>	Low severity vulnerabilities found in the host
<informationalvulnerabilities></informationalvulnerabilities>	Informational vulnerabilities found in the host
<singlevulnerability></singlevulnerability>	
<hostip></hostip>	IP address of the host.
<originaldescription></originaldescription>	The original description of the vulnerability.
<portnumber></portnumber>	The port number of the host
<protocol></protocol>	The protocol used for communication
<servicename></servicename>	The service name
<severity></severity>	The severity of the vulnerability
<vulnerabilitydescription></vulnerabilitydescription>	The description of the vulnerability
<solution></solution>	The solution for the vulnerability.
<riskfactor></riskfactor>	The risk factor, if exists.
<cve></cve>	The CVE ID of the vulnerability.
<bid></bid>	BID ID for the vulnerability, if any.
<otherref></otherref>	Other references, if any. Example: OSVDB:94 CWE:200

View import result and domain statistics

After you import a non-MVM report, the details of the import are displayed in the **Last Import** panel. The following details of the import are displayed.

Field	Description
Time	The time stamp of when the import was done.
Result	 Displays the status of the import. The following are the available status: Success The import is done successfully. Error The import is not done due to an error. The reason for the error is also displayed. Warning The import is done but not complete. The reason for the warning is also displayed.
IPs Added/ Updated/Ignored	Displays the number of IPs that are added, updated or ignored during the import.

The **Domain Statistics** panel displays the number of endpoints for the admin domain for which the vulnerability assessment result is available.

By clicking the **Purge Current Results** in the **Domain Statistics** panel, all the vulnerability assessment results that are stored for the admin domain gets deleted.

Purge vulnerability assessment results

In the **Domain Statistics** panel, you can delete the vulnerability assessment results that are stored in the admin domain. To do so, perform the following steps:

Task

- 1. Select Manager \rightarrow Admin Domain Name \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow Non-MVM Report Import
- 2. Click Purge Current Results in the Domain Statistics panel.
- Click OK to purge all results.
 With Purge Current Results, all the details of the import are reset in the Last Import panel.

Vulnerability assessment

McAfee® Network Security Platform recommends the following while performing Vulnerability Assessment:

- Always use the latest signatures available for your vulnerability assessment (VA) software. This will help ensure the assessment is accurate.
- Where possible, scan all hosts you expect McAfee Network Security Platform to protect. This will help increase the probability that a relevancy status of "Unknown" really means that the attack is not relevant.

• If the scan traffic between the Vulnerability Manager server and the hosts being scanned passes through a Sensor monitoring port, the Sensor may consider it as attack traffic and take the corresponding response action such as quarantining the Vulnerability Manager server. To prevent this:

- Create ACLs to exclude all traffic from the Vulnerability Manager server from attack inspection. For information, see Configuring ACL rules, *McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide*.
- If you have configured Quarantine, add the Vulnerability Manager server to the Quarantine Exceptions list. This prevents the Vulnerability Manager server being quarantined.
- Replace old reports with new reports on a routine basis (weekly or monthly). Given the frequency with which new attacks appear, reports can become obsolete quickly, and render VA integration ineffective.
- Replacing an old report with a new one might result in similar alerts having different relevance values. For example, if Network Security Platform uses an initial scanner report to analyze one alert and an updated scanner report to analyze the next, it may correctly draw different conclusions for each. To avoid confusion, consider acknowledging (or purging) all existing alerts each time you replace reports.

Relevance analysis of attacks

Relevance analysis involves the analysis of the vulnerability relevance of real-time alerts, using the vulnerability data imported into Manager database. The imported vulnerability data can be from Vulnerability Manager or other supported vulnerability scanners such as Nessus.

Vulnerability assessment reports from the scanners contain vulnerabilities detected in a specific host(s) in the network. For example, a vulnerability assessment report will display that the host 10.1.1.x is vulnerable to buffer overflow attack, along with the CVE ID /BugTraq ID of the attack. Manager uses the imported scan report to determine whether the host identified, is vulnerable to that particular attack.

The attack cache in Manager stores the CVE ID of the attacks detected by the McAfee® Network Security Sensor. In the case of relevance analysis, the CVE ID of the vulnerability in the imported report is compared to the CVE ID in the attack cache in Manager. If a matching record is found, the corresponding alert is marked as Relevant. This record is used by the alert correlation module during alert processing to check for the relevancy type, and also used to update the **Relevance** field in the Attack Log.

The status of relevance analysis can be viewed in the **Attack Log** page. The Relevance column is displayed when it is selected from the **Columns** drop-down list.

You can also view the alerts sorted by **Relevance** category in the **Attack Log** page. For more information, see Attack Log in the *McAfee Network Security Platform Manager Interface Reference Guide*.

Marking alerts from vulnerable hosts as relevant helps the network administrator to easily view and sort alerts by relative relevance.

The relevancy analysis lookup is done for real-time alerts by either importing the vulnerability data from Vulnerability Manager database, by running an on demand scan, or by manual import. You can opt to configure the lookup for relevancy from Vulnerability Manager database instead of the relevancy cache in the Manager.

Menu options for relevance analysis

The Manager give you the option to use Vulnerability Manager data in relevance analysis. Select **Manager** \rightarrow **<Admin Domain Name>** \rightarrow **Integration** \rightarrow **Vulnerability Assessment** \rightarrow **MVM** \rightarrow **Alert Relevance**.

The following menu options are displayed:

Relevance menu options

Domain: /My	/ Company	~
D Updating		
Users and	Roles	
Setup		
Integration	1	
GTI		
MLC		
HIP		
HP Netw	ork Automation	
⊳ ePO		
Vulneral	bility Assessment	
Non-MVM Report Import		
⊿ MVM		
⊳ Vu	Inerability Scanning	
⊿ Ale	ert Relevance	
	Summary	
	Enable	
	Manual Import	
	Automation	
	Database	
	Scans	
	Troubleshooting	
Reporting		
Maintenand	e	
Troubleshooting		

ltem	Menu option	Description
1	Alert Relevance	Contains the sub-menu options to configure relevance analysis settings.
2	Summary	Summary details of relevance analysis configuration in the Manager.
3	Enable	Enable relevance analysis.
4	Manual Import	Manually import vulnerability scanner reports to Manager database.
5	Automation	Schedule automatic import of vulnerability reports to Manager database.
6	Database	Configure the Vulnerability Manager database settings for relevance analysis.
7	Scans	Add scan configurations in Manager.

ltem	Menu option	Description
8	Troubleshooting	Troubleshooting options like reloading Vulnerability Manager cache, resetting relevancy cache, and re-submitting database updates.

🗹 Note

The menu options explained above are mentioned as *Relevance menu options* throughout this document.

Relevance configuration details

To view the relevance configuration details in Manager, do the following:

Select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Summary or Manager \rightarrow <Child Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Summary to perform this action from root or child admin domains. The Summary page is displayed.

This page shows the details of relevance configuration such as status of relevance analysis enabled/disabled; Scanner Reports imported manually, Scan import schedule, database settings, and automated scan reports.

Note that the changes saved in all the pages related to relevance configuration are reflected in **Summary** page. When you click on the individual links, you are re-directed to the respective pages.

You can also configure relevance settings using Run Configuration Wizard in Summary page.

Use relevance configuration wizard

You can use the Relevance Configuration Wizard for configuring relevance settings from Manager.

Task

1. Select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Summary or Manager \rightarrow <Child Admin Domain> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Summary for performing this action from root or child admin domains.

2. In the **Summary** page, click **Run Configuration Wizard**.

- 3. The wizard displays the following pages in order:
 - Enable
 - Manual import
 - Automation
 - Database
 - Scans
 - Troubleshooting

- 4. Use **Next >** or **< Back** buttons to navigate through the pages.
- 5. There are five configuration steps in total. Select **Finish** at the end of the fifth step.

Relevance analysis configuration in Manager

You can configure the Relevance settings in Manager in two ways:

- 1. Manually navigating the configuration screens
- 2. Using the Relevance Configuration Wizard

Manually navigating the configuration screens

Following steps are essential for configuring Relevance settings in Manager(in the given order):

- Enabling attack relevance analysis
- Manual import of scan reports
- Automatic import of scan reports
- · Vulnerability manager database settings for relevance analysis
- Adding scan configurations for relevance analysis

Using the Relevance Configuration Wizard

You can also use the Relevance Configuration Wizard for the configuration tasks listed above.

Enable attack relevance analysis

This is the first essential step in configuring Manager for relevance analysis.

To enable relevance analysis, do the following:

Task

- Select Enable from Relevance menu options (Manager → <Admin Domain Name> → Integration → Vulnerability Assessment → MVM → Alert Relevance → Enable or Manager → <Child Admin Domain Name> → Integration → Vulnerability Assessment → MVM → Alert Relevance → Enable to perform this action from root or child admin domains).
- 2. The **Enable** page is displayed.
- 3. Under Enable, select any of the following options from the drop-down list in the Use Scan Results to Enhance Alert Relevance Accuracy? field:
 - Passive Relevance
 - Active Relevance
 - Disabled

Passive relevance option

You can add a passive relevance option. To do so, perform the following steps.

Task

1. Under Enable, select Passive Relevance option from the drop-down list next to Use Scan Results to Enhance Alert Relevance Accuracy?.

Relevance tab

/My Company > Integration > Vuln	erability Assessment > MVM > Alert Relevance > Enable	
When integration is enabled, imported	vulnerability scan results are used by the Manager to calculate the relevance of alerts.	
Note: The Manager supports manual in Julnerability Manager (MVM).	nport of scan results from multiple vendors and both manual and scheduled import from McAfee	
Enable		
Use Scan Results to Enhance Alert Relevance Accuracy?	Active Relevance Passive Relevance Active Relevance Disabled Active Relevance Disabled	

- 2. The Manager uses the imported vulnerability scan report to determine the vulnerability relevance of real-time alerts. The CVE ID of the vulnerability in the imported report is compared to the CVE ID in the attack cache in the Manager. If a match is found, the corresponding attack is marked as Relevant.
- 3. Click Save.

The screen is refreshed and you get an update that the changes have been updated.

Active relevance option

You can add an active relevance option. To do so, perform the following steps.

Task

- 1. Under Enable, select Active Relevance option from the drop-down list in Use Scan Results to Enhance Alert Relevance Accuracy? field.
- 2. The Manager queries the Vulnerability Manager database for the real-time lookup of the relevancy data. Unlike Passive Relevance, when Active Relevance option is configured, the Manager does not lookup for relevancy for every alert received into Manager alert queue from the Sensor. When the alert is received from IPS Sensor, Relevancy is set to "*Pending*" state initially. After a minute, relevancy for these alerts with pending state are updated by performing a relevancy lookup from Vulnerability Manager database.

🗹 Note

In addition to the current Relevancy cache, the Manager maintains a separate cache for the relevancy data returned by the stored procedure for the destination IPs.

3. Click Save to save your settings. The screen is refreshed and you get an update that the changes have been updated.

Disabled option

Under **Enable**, select the **Disabled** option from the drop-down list in **Use Scan Results to Enhance Alert Relevance Accuracy?** field to disable the relevance analysis.

Query and retrieve asset information from Vulnerability Manager database

For the host that has already been scanned using Vulnerability Manager Scan engine, the Asset Details are returned by the Vulnerability Manager. If the Vulnerability Manager fails to return the data, you can initiate a scan for that IP address from the Threat Explorer.

Follow this procedure to initiate a scan from the Threat Explorer

Task

1. In the Manager, navigate to **Analysis** | **<Admin Domain Name>** | **Threat Explorer**.

The **Top Attacks** page is displayed.

						Top:	10 🛩 Attacks	 Any Direction 	✓ 09/01/16 2:16 PM - 11/	18/16 2:16 PM	1
đ	Filter 🕞 View Attacks										
0	p Attacks										
									Attack Name		
	Attack Name		Attack Category		Attack Subcategory			Attack Severity		Attack Count	
1	P2P: BitTorrent File Transfer Ha	indShaking	Policy Violation		restricted-application			🗕 Medium		1	97,12
2	DDoS: Stacheldraht Master-to-	Agent Communicat	Exploit		ddos-agent-activity			 Medium 		(66,44
3	P2P: PPStream Traffic Detected		Policy Violation		restricted-application			Medium			8,35
4	ICMP: Nachi-like Ping		Exploit		dos			Medium			1,19
5	P2P: PPLive Traffic Detected 2		Policy Violation		restricted-application			Medium			38
6	4374560		Policy Violation		restricted-application			Medium			25
7	P2P: QQLive Protocol Detected		Policy Violation		restricted-application			Medium			25
8	BACKDOOR: Windows Comman	nd Shell Running	Exploit		backdoor			High			25
9	SMB: Generic Buffer Overflow	Attempt Detected	Exploit		protocol-violation			Medium			19
10	4374650		Policy Violation		restricted-application			Medium			15
Ter	p Attackers										
10	p Attackers								Attacker IP A	ddroco	
	Attacker IP Address	Attacker DNS Name		Attacker (ounter			Attacker User	Attacker IF A	Attack Cou	
	121.10.130.9	Attacker Dits Halle		Attacker	Jound y			Inknown			66,44
	212.10.87.19	d40a5713.rev.stofa	net.dk.					Inknown			1,00
3	177.19.32.124	177.19.32.124.stat	c.host.gvt.net.br.				L	Inknown			61
4	106.167.147.226	kd106167147226.p	pp-bb.dion.ne.jp.				L. L	Inknown			61
5	5.18.96.246	5x18x96x246.static	-business.iz.ertelecom.ru.				L	Inknown			47
6	39.65.119.131						U	Inknown			42
7	211 220 76 77						1	Inknown			30

2. Click Add Filter.

The Add Filter Criterion dialog is displayed.

Add Filter Criterion		×
Filter On:	Attacker IP Address	
Value:	10.213.169.180	
		Save Cancel

Select Attacker IP Address in the Filter On: field, enter the attacker IP address in the Value field and click Save
 If the attacker IP has already been scanned, the scan results are displayed.
 /Hy Company > Threat Explorer

				Top:	5 💙 Attacks	✓ Any Direction	✓ Last 5 minutes	~
Attacke	er IP Address 10.	213.169.180 X Add Filter View Attacks						
st Scan Time:		2016-11-22 10:03:24.0						
Scan Engine:	:	WIN-T54DUL7S4L4						
pen Ports								~
rotoPort	Service	Description						
p/80	http	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol						
p/135	loc-srv	Windows RPC service						
ip/137 p/139	netbios-ns netbios-ssn	NETBIOS Name Service NETBIOS Session Service						
p/139 p/443	https	NETBIOS Session Service						
p/1027	unknown	unknown						
p/1028	unknown	unknown						
p/1036	unknown	unknown						
p/1037	unknown	unknown						
p/8088	unknown	unknown						
ulnerabilitie	s							\approx
sk	Name		C	VE				
Low	NetBIOS NE	TSTAT -A						
Informatio	LSASS RPC	Interface Detected		-				
Informatio	SSL Server	Information Detected		-				
Informatio	NetBIOS Bi	idings Information Detected						
Informatio	NetBIOS Na	mes Information Accessible						
Informatio	Hidden WW	W Server Name Detected						
Informatio	Microsoft R	mote Procedure Call Service Detected		-				

4. If the attacker IP has not been scanned, click **Scan for Vulnerabilities** to scan the attacker IP address and view the results.

/My Company > Threat Explorer					?
	Тор:	5 🛛 Attacks	▼ Any Direction	▼ Last 5 minute	s 🔻 C
Filter: Attacker IP Address 10.213.17.44 X Add Filter Image: Wiew Attacks					
Attacker IP Address - 10.213.17.44					*
				Optional	Tabs 🕶
Endpoint Information Vulnerability Assessment Endpoint Security Events					
🚱 Scan for Vulnerabilities			S	earch	C
General Activity					\$
Overall Criticality:					

Import scan reports manually

This is the second (optional) step in configuring Manager for relevance analysis. This step is optional if you are using Vulnerability Manager scans, because you can import Vulnerability Manager scan reports either manually or automatically as per schedule. Other third party scans only be imported manually.

You can manually import scanner reports from supported scanners like Vulnerability Manager or NessusWX to the Manager. For importing other third-party vulnerability scanner reports (like Qualys or nCircle), you need to convert the report to the Network Security Platform format.

Refer the DTD included with Network Security Platform (GenVulReportFlat.dtd) when converting your XML-based format to the Network Security Platform format.

To manually import a vulnerability scanner report in Manager, do the following:

Task

 Select Manual Import from Alert Relevance menu options (Manager → <Admin Domain Name> → Integration → Vulnerability Assessment → MVM → Alert Relevance → Manual Import or Manager → <Child Admin Domain Name> → Integration → Vulnerability Assessment → MVM → Alert Relevance → Manual Import for performing this action from root or child admin domains).

Manually Imported Scan Reports area

/My Company > Integration	on > Vulnerability Assessme	ent > MVM > Alert Relevanc	e > Manual Import	?
Use this page to manually im	port scan results.			
Note: Only scan results base	d on IP address will be imported	d - results based on hostname	will be ignored.	
The following scan report form	nats are supported:			
2. Tenable Nessus 4.x and	nager version 7.0 and 7.5.x rep 5.x reports in .nessus format the intermediate Network Secu		Help for details)	
Manually Imported Scan R	leports			
File Name	Report Type	Description	Scan Time	State
No scan reports present				
				New

2. In Manually Imported Scan Reports, click New. The Import a Scan Report window appears.

Import a Scan Report dialog

Import a Scan Report			\times
Use this page to import a vulnerabili	ty scan report.		
Fields marked with an asterisk (*) a	re required.		
Import a Scan Report		Please Select Nessus	
Report Type:	McAfee Vulnerability Manager 🗸 *	McAfee Vulnerability Manager Network Security Manager	
Description:	New scan	*	
Report file:	Browse *		
Enable on import?			
		Import Report Can	cel

3. Select a **Report Type** from the drop-down list.

🗹 Note

The report can be from any of the supported scanners or formats.

- 4. Provide a **Description** corresponding to the selected scanner report type.
- 5. Click Browse and choose a Report file. You can select a report file from the local machine.
- 6. To import the report to Manager database, select **Enable on import?** checkbox.
- 7. Click **Import Report** to import the scanner report.
- 8. The scanner report is imported to Manager database, and displayed in the Manually Imported Scan Reports page.

🗹 Note

The imported report is stored in Manager database in Network Security Platform format. In the **Manually Imported Scan Reports** window, if you select the link in **File Name** field, you can view the report in Network Security Platform format in a separate window.

Supported vulnerability scanners and formats

Network Security Platform supports the following vulnerability scanner versions and report formats:

Scanners supported	Scanner version	Report format
Vulnerability Manager Enterprise	7.0 and 7.5	XML
NessusWX	6.x	Plain text
Third party vulnerability scanners (for example, Qualys, nCircle)		Network Security Platform format

Vulnerability reports from the above scanners can be imported to Manager.

Vulnerability Manager format

McAfee Vulnerability Manager Enterprise is a vulnerability assessment (VA) platform for automated discovery and prioritization of system vulnerabilities and threats in an enterprise network.

Network Security Platform supports Vulnerability Manager reports in the XML format only. Vulnerability Manager XML reports include assessments sorted by hostname (Host_Data.xml) and risk (Risk_Data.xml). Network Security Platform supports both these formats.

You can manually or automatically import Vulnerability Manager scan reports to Manager.

NessusWX

Nessus is an open-source vulnerability assessment scanner that follows a client/server model. The Nessus server (nessusd) only runs on UNIX, but there are Nessus clients available for both UNIX and Windows.

Network Security Platform supports the popular Windows client, NessusWX. Note that NessusWX reports should be saved as plain text, since in this case, Network Security Platform supports only plain text format.

Network Security Platform format

Customers who use third-party vulnerability scanners (for example, Qualys and nCircle) can manually import the corresponding scanner reports to Manager.

But for successfully importing and viewing these scanner reports in Manager, the third party reports should be converted to an intermediate XML format, as per the Document Type Definition (DTD) provided by Network Security Platform. This XML format is known as Network Security Platform format.

🗹 Note

Refer the DTD included with Network Security Platform (GenVulReportFlat.dtd) when converting your XML-based format to the Network Security Platform format.

Why Network Security Platform format is used?

Since, there is no industry standard for the format of vulnerability assessment reports, Network Security Platform converts all imported reports into the Network Security Platform format. In this way, support for new report formats can be added without having to change the way the Alert Correlation Engine works. The converted report and its metadata are stored in a new table called **iv_vul_record** in the Manager database, which is saved as part of the standard backup and MDR synchronization processes.

Import scans automatically

This is the third (optional) step in configuring Manager for relevance analysis. This step is optional if you are using Vulnerability Manager scans, because you can import Vulnerability Manager scan reports either manually or automatically as per schedule. Other third party scans only be imported manually.

For importing scanned vulnerability reports from Vulnerability Manager database to Manager database, you can use the Automation function in Manager.

During the automatic import process, the Automation scheduler invokes a stored procedure in the Vulnerability database, which returns all the vulnerability data to the Manager database. The vulnerability data retrieved corresponds to the scan configuration that was used for vulnerability assessment. Manager retrieves the relevance information based on the last import time of Automation.

Task

 Select Manager → <Admin Domain Name> → Integration → Vulnerability Assessment → MVM → Alert Relevance → Automation to perform this action from root or child admin domains. The Vulnerability Manager Scheduler window is displayed.

Automation sub-tab

/My Company > Integration > Vulneral	vility Assessment > MVM > Alert Relevance > Automation ?
Use this page to schedule the frequency at alert relevance analysis only.)	which the Manager imports the latest vulnerability scan results from McAfee Vulnerability Manager (MVM). (This is applicable for active
Automation	
Automate MVM Scan Report Import?	Ves No
Frequency:	Daily Weekly SUN
	Start at: 00 V Hr and 05 V Min
	Import Now! Apply

- 2. Select Yes for Automate Scan Report Import?. This enables automatic import of reports by the scheduler.
- 3. To schedule the frequency of import on a weekly or daily basis, select **Daily** or **Weekly** import options for the **Frequency**.
- 4. Select the start time for scheduler operation, from Start At.
- If you wish to import the vulnerability data from Vulnerability Manager immediately, select Import Now!.
 The page is refreshed, and a message is displayed that vulnerability data is successfully imported from Vulnerability Manager database.
- 6. Click **Apply**, to save your settings. The page is refreshed, and a message is displayed that the settings are successfully updated.

🗹 Note

The Import Now! feature available in the parent domain, at Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Automation, is not applicable for child domains that have Vulnerability Manager settings (Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Enable or Manager \rightarrow <Child Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Enable) set to Inherit Settings?. Consequently, Import Now! and Apply buttons are not seen in the Automation page (Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Automation or Manager \rightarrow <Child Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Automation or Manager \rightarrow <Child Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Automation or Manager \rightarrow <Child Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Automation or Manager \rightarrow <Child Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Automation or Manager \rightarrow <Child Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Automation or Manager \rightarrow <Child Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Automation of such child domains.

Vulnerability Manager database settings for relevance analysis

This is the fourth step in configuring Manager for relevance analysis.

To retrieve the relevance information from Vulnerability Manager database, it is essential to configure the Vulnerability Manager database settings in the Manager.

Task

- 1. Select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Database Settings to perform this action from root or child admin domains.
- 2. Database Settings window for relevance analysis configuration is displayed.
- 3. The fields in the **Database Settings** page under the **Alert Relevance** tab are similar to the **Database Settings** page under the **Vulnerability Scanning** tab.

Add scan configurations for relevance analysis

This is the fifth and final step in configuring Manager for relevance analysis.

Scan configurations defined in Vulnerability Manager are to be added to the Manager. This is required for initiating Vulnerability Manager scans from the Threat Explorer. Depending on the host IP address, the appropriate scan configuration in Manager is used to scan the host.

When you enable relevance analysis, Manager automatically imports the latest results for each Vulnerability Manager scan, and uses them for relevance analysis.

Following steps are essential for adding scan configurations:

Task

- 1. Select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Scans to perform this action from root or child domains.
- 2. The **Added Vulnerability Manager Scan Configurations** page for relevance analysis is displayed.
- 3. The fields in the **Added Vulnerability Manager Scan Configurations** page under the **Alert Relevance** tab are similar to the **Added Vulnerability Manager Scan Configurations** page under the **Vulnerability Scanning** tab.

Fault messages for Vulnerability Manager scheduler

Following table lists the fault messages associated with Scheduler report import process:

Fault displayed	Severity	Description
Vulnerability data import from Vulnerability Manager database was successful	Informational	This message indicates that the vulnerability data import from Vulnerability Manager database by the Scheduler, is successful.

Fault displayed	Severity	Description
Scheduled Vulnerability Manager vulnerability data import failed	Critical	This message indicates that the vulnerability data import by the Scheduler from Vulnerability Manager database, has failed.

When you click on the fault links, you can view the details of the fault, and also the possible actions for correcting the fault.

Support for Vulnerability Manager custom certificates

In order to use Vulnerability Manager custom certificates, you should run the Vulnerability Manager *Certificate Management tool,* which generates the custom client certificates. Third-party SOAP clients can use the custom client certificates for SSL client authentication with FoundScan engine.

🗹 Note

For more information about FCM tool installation and importing custom certificates to java keystore, refer the *FSCustomCerts-Readme.txt* file in the following path in Manager server: //Network Security Platform/config/fscerts/

🗹 Note

For more information about creating custom client certificates using FCM tool, see Working with SSL certificates, *McAfee Network Security Platform Foundstone Configuration Manager Guide*.

🗹 Note

The product names, "Foundstone", and "Vulnerability Manager" refer to the same product.

Generate Vulnerability Manager SSL custom certificate for Manager

You can generate Vulnerability Manager SSL custom certificate for the Manager. To do so, perform the following steps.

Task

- 1. Download and unzip the Vulnerability Manager Certificate Manager Installer. Select the correct version for your installation of Vulnerability Manager.
- 2. Copy this file to the Vulnerability Manager server and run it. This installs the Vulnerability Manager Certificate Management Tool.

🗹 Note

The Certificate Management Tool must be run on the server hosting the 'FCM Server Component' depending on the version of the Vulnerability Manager (7.0 or 7.5).

- 3. Launch the Vulnerability Manager Certificate Management Tool.
 - a. Click the Create SSL Certificates tab.
 - b. Type the name of the Manager server in the **Host Address** field and click **Resolve**.
 - c. After the hostname is resolved, click **Create Certificate using Common Name**.

🗹 Note

After running the Vulnerability Manager Certificate Management Tool on the server hosting the Vulnerability Manager FCM Server application, a ZIP file (ThirdPartyAPI-SSL.zip) gets generated. It contains certificates for the 3rd-party clients that can be used for SSL client authentication with the Vulnerability Manager engine. The ZIP file contains the following certificate files:

- FoundstoneCAPublicCertificate.pem
- FoundstoneClientCertificate.p12
- FoundstoneClientCertificate.pem
- FoundstoneClientPublicCertificate.cer
- d. Save the resulting file (**ThirdPartyAPI-SSL.zip**) to the desktop.
- e. The tool also creates a new passphrase for the certificate.
- f. Copy and save the passphrase in a text file and name it **passphrase.txt**.
- g. Copy passphrase.txt into ThirdPartyAPI-SSL.zip.

Import the custom certificates into the Manager keystore

You can import the custom certificates into the Manager keystore. To do so, perform the following steps.

Task

- 1. On the Manager create a new folder named **customcerts** at <Manager install directory>\config\fscerts\customcerts.
- 2. Copy the **ThirdPartyAPI-SSL.zip** from Vulnerability Manager server to a temporary folder on the Manager server and extract the contents to the **customcerts** folder you just created.
- 3. On the Manager server, select **Start** \rightarrow **Run**, type **cmd**, and then click **OK**. Navigate to <Manager install directory>\bin.
- 4. At the command prompt, for the parent and each child domain created on the Manager, type the following commands using the following parameters:

FScertimport <MVM version #> <"MainDomainName\ChildDomainName">.

For example, if your main domain in the Manager is "AmazingDeals" and you have created child domains under that named "EastCoast", "MidWest", and "WestCoast" and you are integrating with Vulnerability manager 7.0, then your certificate install commands would be as follows:

• FScertimport 7.0 "AmazingDeals"

- FScertimport 7.0 "AmazingDeals\EastCoast"
- FScertimport 7.0 "AmazingDeals\MidWest"
- FScertimport 7.0 "AmazingDeals\WestCoast"
- 5. Each time you run the Vulnerability Manager Certificate importer you will be asked for the Import password. Enter that passphrase at the **Import Password** prompt.

This is the passphrase that you captured when the Certificate Management Tool was run on Vulnerability Manager server.

- 6. Enter **Y** for the **Trust this Certificate? [no]** prompt.
- 7. The custom certificates are now imported to the Manager.
- 8. The FSCertImport.bat utility generates two keystore files (fs.keystore and fstrust.keystore) each time you run the utility. These files are placed in the customcerts folder in a hierarchy of \Version#\DomainName.
- 9. Run an OnDemand scan from Threat Explorer for any IP to check if the client authentication works for the newly imported keystore files generated for Vulnerability Manager custom certificates.

Troubleshooting options

Following troubleshooting options are available with respect to Network Security Platform-Vulnerability Manager integration and Relevance Analysis:

- Reloading Vulnerability Manager cache— If the added scan configurations are suspected as missing from Manager.
- Resetting the relevancy cache if you wish to reload the data in Manager Relevancy Cache, that is presently used by Manager for relevance analysis.

• Updating the Vulnerability Manager database again— If you suspect that the Vulnerability Manager database is not updated with the required tables and stored procedures that are required for importing information from Vulnerability Manager database to Manager database.

To access the Troubleshooting options in Manager,

- $\bullet \hspace{0.5cm} \text{Select Manager} \rightarrow \text{<} \text{Admin Domain Name>} \rightarrow \text{Integration} \rightarrow \text{Vulnerability Assessment} \rightarrow \text{MVM} \rightarrow \text{Alert Relevance}$
- \rightarrow **Troubleshooting** for performing this action from root or child admin domains.

Troubleshooting Options area

/My Company > Integration > Vulnerability Assessment > MVM > Alert Rele	vance > Troubleshooting
Troubleshooting Options	
Cache	
Reload the scan configuration cache if you suspect scan configurations have been removed or modified in the Vulnerability Manager user interface. This updates the scan configurations added to the Network Security Manager accordingly.	Reload Scan Cache
Database Updates	
When integration is first configured, the Manager automatically updates the MVM database with the required tables and stored procedures. If you believe one or more of these objects is corrupt or missing, resubmit the database updates.	Resubmit Database Updates

🗹 Note

The **Reload Scan Cache** button is visible only when integration with Vulnerability Manager is enabled, and scans are added.

Reload Vulnerability Manager cache

The **Reload Scan Cache** option helps you to load the Vulnerability Manager web cache in Manager with the most recent scan configurations retrieved from Vulnerability Manager.

Task

- 1. Make sure that you have enabled Vulnerability Manager configuration and added the scan configurations to Manager.
- 2. You can access **Cache** page in two ways:
 - From Vulnerability Manager configuration settings— Select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Vulenrability Scanning \rightarrow Troubleshooting to perform this action from root or child admin domains.
 - From Relevance settings— Select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Troubleshooting to perform this action from root or child admin domains.
- 3. Click **Reload Scan Cache** to update the Vulnerability web cache in Manager with the latest scan configurations from Vulnerability Manager.

A message is displayed that the reload is successful.

The **Reload Scan Cache** button will not be visible in the **Troubleshooting** link for the reasons provided in the following table.

#	Reason	Solution
1	Vulnerability Manager configuration is disabled.	Enable Vulnerability Manager configuration.
2	Vulnerability Manager scan configurations are not added to Manager.	Add scan configurations to Manager.

Reset relevancy cache

If you want to update the relevancy cache in Manager, reset the cache from the troubleshooting options.

Task

- 1. Select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Alert Relevance \rightarrow Troubleshooting.
- 2. Select **Resubmit Database Updates**. A message is displayed that the relevancy cache was successfully reloaded.

Resubmission of database updates

When the Vulnerability Manager database settings are configured, Manager automatically updates Vulnerability Manager database with tables and stored procedures that are required to retrieve relevance information from the database.

If you find that database is not properly updated with the required tables and stored procedures, you can resubmit the updates to the Vulnerability Manager database from Manager. Select **Manager** \rightarrow **<Admin Domain Name>** \rightarrow **Integration** \rightarrow **Vulnerability Assessment** \rightarrow **MVM** \rightarrow **Alert Relevance** \rightarrow **Troubleshooting** for this purpose.

Select Resubmit Database Updates to resubmit the updates to the Vulnerability Manager database.

Vulnerability Manager - Certificate Sync and FC Agent issues

Problem	Solution
FC Agent service doesn't get installed while installing the Manager	 To install FCAgent service: Download the software vcredist_x86.exe and run it in that host. Download link http://www.microsoft.com/download/en/details.aspx? displaylang=en&id=5638.

Problem	Solution
	3. At the command prompt, go to c:\Program Files (x86)\foundstone\FCM and run the command fcagent -i to install the service.
When you click on API tab in the Manager, internal server error is displayed	This issue might be seen in some systems when the command sc query FCAgent is executed internally in the Manager. To run this command, the server in which manager is deployed might not have the right permission settings. the Administrator has to provide permission to run sc.exe.
	To change permission settings for sc.exe.
	 Go to //windows/system32/sc.exe. Right-click sc.exe and select Properties. Click the Security tab. Add a local service and provide full permission.
FCAgent service doesn't start in Manager server	 To integrate with Vulnerability Manager, the Manager must update the Windows registry. However, the user account used to run the Manager service will not have permissions to write to the Windows registry if the Manager is fully locked down. To give that user account the required permissions, follow these steps: On the server running the Manager, run regedit.exe. Change the permissions on registry and allow Full Control to 'Local Service' for the keys: HKLM HKLM\Software HKLM\Software\Foundstone Right-click on these keys and choose Permissions. Add the user account used to run the Manager service (likely LOCAL SERVICE). Give that user account Full Control over the key. Click OK.
	 Note: Changes take effect immediately. A reboot is not required. 7. In the API Server page, click Save.
	Note: If the operating system is 64-bit, perform this procedure for these keys:
	• HKLM

Problem	Solution
You are able to start the FC Agent service, clicking on 'Retrieve MVM Certificate' returns error	 HKLM\Software HKLM\Software\wow6432Node HKLM\Software\wow6432Node\Foundstone. HKLM\Software\wow6432Node\Foundstone. It might be because port 3801 is not enabled in the API server. Check if port 3801 has been enabled. Vulnerability Manager could be deployed in distributed mode where FCM Server could be in one server. The API Server. DR. Enterprise Manager and Scan Engines could be apother.
message.	one server. The API Server, DB , Enterprise Manager and Scan Engines could be another server. In the API server page try configuring the FCM Server IP address and port 3801. Try clicking the Retrieve MVM Certificate button. If the OnDemand scan fails, try changing the port back to 3800.
Retrieve MVM certificate is failing even though the SSHStauscache and	This might occur if C:program files\found stone or C:program Files(x86) \Foundstone" does not have write permission for Local Service. 1. Add local service and giving full permission to local service.
Statuscache keys are present in the registry	2. Click Retrieve MVM Certificate again after giving the required permissions.

Error messages

The following error messages are associated with the integration:

Failed to save settings

This is displayed when the Manager fails to write the Foundstone specific keys into the Windows Registry.

Failed to retrieve the MVM certificate

This error message is displayed if:

- You click Retrive MVM Certificate before the start of the service or
- The certificate synchronization is still in progress or
- If the user account used to run the Manager service, does not have permission to write to the Windows registry or, if the Manager is fully locked down.

Solution

- On the Network Security Manager server, click $\textbf{Start} \rightarrow \textbf{run}, type \texttt{regedit.exe}.$
- Right-click the HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software key.
- Select Permissions.

- Add the user account used to run the McAfee Network Security Manager service.
- Give that user account **Full Control** over the key.
- Click **OK**.
- Repeat steps 1 to 6 for the following keys:
 - HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\wow6432Node
 - HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\wow6432Node\Foundstone
- Click **Start** → **run**, type services.msc, and click **OK**.
- Start the Foundstone Configuration Management Agent service.

🗹 Note

The changes take effect immediately. You do not have to reboot.

- If this service starts and stops again, add the following registry key:
 - Go to HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Wow6432Node\Foundstone\.
 - Right-click the right panel.
 - Create a **String Value** and name it **BasePath**.
 - Double-click the newly created key and add the following value:

C:\Program Files (x86)\Foundstone (or path where the Foundstone files are located on the Manager server)

- Repeat steps 8 and 9 to start the Foundstone Configuration Management Agent service.
- To restart the Vulnerability Manager Configuration Wizard, go to Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Vulnerability Scanning \rightarrow Summary, and click Run Configuration Wizard.

OR

Select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow Vulnerability Assessment \rightarrow MVM \rightarrow Vulnerability Scanning \rightarrow API server.

• Click Retrieve MVM Certificate.

Failed to communicate with the API server

This error message is displayed for Vulnerability Scan Information.

Integration with McAfee Host Intrusion Prevention

McAfee® Network Security Platform integrates with McAfee® Host Intrusion Prevention version 8.0.

Host Intrusion Prevention is a Host-based intrusion prevention system, which prevents external and internal attacks on the hosts in the network, thus protecting services and applications running on them.

Host Intrusion Prevention is now completely integrated with McAfee ePO^{IM} 5.10.0. The Manager uses an McAfee ePO^{IM} extension file to obtain real-time Host Intrusion Prevention events from the McAfee ePO^{IM} server. The extension file (NSPExtension.zip) needs to be downloaded from the Manager , and installed on the McAfee ePO^{IM} server using McAfee ePO^{IM} console. Once the extension file is installed on the McAfee ePO^{IM} console, ensure that the Host Intrusion Prevention extension is also installed on the McAfee ePO^{IM} server. You can use the **Download the ePO extension for the Network Security Manager here** link in the **Enable** page (**Manager** \rightarrow **Admin Domain Name>** \rightarrow **Integration** \rightarrow **HIP** \rightarrow **Enable**) to download the (NSPExtension.zip) extension.

Within the Manager's context, the Host Intrusion Prevention integration functions like a Sensor. In other words, Manager treats the McAfee ePO[™] server running the server portion of the Host Intrusion Prevention software as a special type of Sensor. That is, the Manager receives the events information from Host Intrusion Prevention, incorporates these events into its database and provides these events for further viewing/actions in the Attack Log and reports, like any other Network Security Platform alert.

Configure the Host Intrusion Prevention Sensor in the Manager by providing a name and a shared secret key. You need to then configure that Manager's IP address and the shared secret on the McAfee ePO^M server console as well. Once trust is established, the Host Intrusion Prevention Sensor is displayed in the **Device** drop-down list of the Manager . You can use the **Add a virtual Host Intrusion Prevention sensor here** link in the **Enable** page (**Manager** \rightarrow **<Admin Domain Name>** \rightarrow **Integration** \rightarrow **HIP** \rightarrow **Enable**) to begin the process of configuring the Host Intrusion Prevention Sensor in the Manager .

The Host Intrusion Prevention events are displayed in the Attack Log. You can view the alerts by filtering the Host Intrusion Prevention device in the **Device** column of the Attack Log page.

🗹 Note

Only Host Intrusion Prevention IPS events are sent to the Manager.

🗹 Note

Quarantine is not applicable to Host Intrusion Prevention events in the Attack Log.

In case of MDR pair, alerts are sent to both the active and the standby Manager .

Configure Host Intrusion Prevention details

You can integrate the Manager with Host Intrusion Prevention. To do so, perform the following steps.

Task

- 1. In the Manager navigate to Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow HIP. The Enable page appears.
- Click Download the ePO extension for the Network Security Manager here link.
 A dialog box appears prompting you to confirm whether you want to Open or Save NSPExtension.zip
- 3. Save the **NSPExtension.zip** to a location for future use.
- 4. Logon to McAfee ePO[™] console.
- 5. Navigate to Menu \rightarrow Software \rightarrow Extensions. The ePolicy Orchestrator page appears.
- 6. Click Install Extension.

The Install Extension dialog-box appears.

- Browse and select the McAfee ePO[™] extension file from the location mentioned in step 4.
 Once installed, the Manager is listed under the Settings Categories list.
- 8. Verify on the McAfee ePO[™] console that the Host Intrusion Prevention extension is installed.

Add a Host Intrusion Prevention Sensor

Installation of a Host Intrusion Prevention Sensor is similar to adding a Sensor.

Task

- 1. Select **Devices** \rightarrow **<Admin Domain Name>** \rightarrow **Global** \rightarrow **Add and Remove Devices**.
- 2. Click New.

The Add New Device area is displayed.

Add New Device area

/My Company > Add and Remove Device

Adding a new device is a two-step process: The first step is to define the device on the Manager, and the second step is to 'establish the trust' (create a secure channel) between them. Use this page to perform the first step.

Note: The device name must start with a letter and can contain alphanumeric characters, hyphens, underscores and periods.

Note: The device name and shared secret will be used again in step two to establish the trust.

Important: The device name and shared secret are case sensitive.

Fields marked with an asterisk (*) are required.

Add New Device			
Device Name:	HIP1	*	
Device Type:	Virtual HIP Sensor 💌 *		
Shared Secret:	*****	*	
Confirm Shared Secret:	•••••	*	
Updating Mode:	Online 👻		
Contact Information:			
Location:			
			Sava Cancel

3. Type a unique name at **Device Name** to identify the Host Intrusion Prevention Management Server in the Manager. The name can contain up to 25 alphanumeric (upper or lower case letters and numbers) characters, including hyphens, underscores, and periods. The name must begin with a letter.

- 4. Select the Device Type as Virtual HIP Sensor .
- 5. Type a password at **Shared Secret** for verifying the Manager -Host Intrusion Prevention communication. The shared secret must be a minimum of 8 characters in length and can contain up to 25 alphanumeric (upper or lower case letters and numbers) characters, including hyphens, underscores, and periods. The secret cannot start with an exclamation mark nor have any spaces.

🗹 Note

The exact, case-sensitive **Device Name** and **Shared Secret** must also be entered on the ePO console for Host Intrusion Prevention integration.

- 6. (Optional) Type the **Contact Information** and **Location**.
- 7. Click **Save** to begin the Manager -ePO server handshake process.

🗹 Note

You need to configure the Host Intrusion Prevention Sensor details on the ePO console as well to establish trust.

Once trust is established, the Host Intrusion Prevention Sensor is displayed in the **Device** drop-down list and the **Add and Remove Devices** page.

Configure the Host Intrusion Prevention Sensor in McAfee ePO

To configure a Host Intrusion Prevention Sensor on the McAfee ePO[™] server and establish trust between the Manager and McAfee ePO[™] , perform the following steps:

Task

- Logon to McAfee ePO[™] console.
 McAfee ePO[™] console Home page is displayed.
- 2. Select $\textbf{Menu} \rightarrow \textbf{Configuration} \rightarrow \textbf{Server Settings}.$
- 3. Browse and select NSP & HIP Integration.
- 4. Click Edit.

🗹 Note

You need to stop the Scheduler before editing existing settings.

The Edit NSP & HIP Integration page is displayed.

Edit NSP & HIP Integration page

Edit NSP & HIP Integration			
Specify the name or IP address of the Ne	Specify the name or IP address of the Network Security Manager, the name and shared secret of the Virtual Sensor you previously defined within the Network Security Manager console, and optionally customize the communication ports.		
Network Security Manager	172.16.230.175		
Virtual Host Intrusion Prevention Sensor	Sensor Name HIPS Shared Secret ••••••• Confirm Shared Secret •••••••		
Init channel port	8501		
Alert channel port	8502		
Packet channel port	8503		
Events to forward	Host IPS only Evolution Host & Network IPS		

5. Enter the following to configure:

Field	Description
Manager IP	The IP address of the Manager server on which the Host Intrusion Prevention Sensor is to be configured.

Field	Description
Sensor Name	Name of the Sensor
Shared Secret	The shared secret key that must match with the shared secret entered in the Manager
Confirm Shared Secret	Confirmation of the shared secret key.
Init channel port	The port the Manager uses to exchange configuration information with the Sensor.
Alert channel port	The port on which the Manager listens for Sensor alerts.
Packet channel port	The port the Manager uses for sending the signature ID mapping information.

- 6. Click **Save** to save changes and return to the previous page.
- 7. Click **Start** to establish trust between the Manager and Host Intrusion Prevention.

NSP and HIP integration page

	Protection Workspace Da	ashboards System Tree Queries & Reports Policy Catalog Security Resources	~
Configuration			
Server Settings			
Setting Categories			
Password Policy	Use this page to enable integration bet	ween Host Intrusion Prevention and Network Security Platform. When enabled, ePO forwards Host Intrusion Prevention IPS events to the Network Security Manager.	In
Policy and Task Retention	this way, all IPS events (network and h	ost) can be viewed from a single console.	
Ports			
Printing and Exporting	Network Security Manager	10.208.	
Product Compatibility List	Virtual Host Intrusion Prevention	HIP5_1	
Product Improvement Program	Sensor		
Proxy Settings	Init channel port	8506	
Rogue System Sensor			
Scheduler Tasks	Alert channel port	8507	
Security Keys	Packet channel port	8508	
Self-Service Portal Settings			
Server Certificate	Status	Trust establishment successful Refresh Stop	
Server Information			
Software Evaluation	Last event sent timestamp	and a second sec	
Solidcore	Number of events sent	0 Reset	
Source Sites			
System Details Settings	Type of events sent	Host & Network IPS	
System Tree Sorting		Activate Windows Go to Settings to activate Windows.	
User Policies			
Hear Coosian			

Integration with McAfee Logon Collector

The Manager can display a variety of information about the hosts inside and outside a network.

In the Attack Log, the host user name is available along with the IP address.

The Manager integrates with McAfee Logon Collector (MLC) to display user names of the hosts in your IPS and NTBA deployments. The Logon Collector provides an out-of-band method to obtain user names from the Active Directories.

Benefits

This integration helps to provide information about source and destination users.

Integration requirements

The following are the minimum requirements for this integration:

- Manager version— 8.1 and later
- Logon Collector version 2.0 and later
- System requirements—
 - For running Logon Collector 2.0 and 2.1: Windows Server 2003 and 2008
 - For running Logon Collector 2.2: Windows Server 2008 R2 and 2012

🤆 Tip

The Logon Monitor is part of the Logon Collector bundle that you downloaded.

Download the software

Download the bundled Logon Collector and Logon Monitor software from the McAfee website.

Task

- 1. In a web browser, go to https://secure.mcafee.com/apps/downloads/my-products/login.aspx?region=us.
- 2. Provide your grant number, and select the appropriate product category (for example, McAfee® Firewall Enterprise Appliance).
- 3. Select the McAfee Logon Collector version, for example McAfee Logon Collector 3.0.
- 4. Download the zip file for the Logon Collector installation. Extract the files to your local directory.
- 5. Find the Logon Collector installation program and download it to your local directory. The Logon Monitor is part of the Logon Collector bundle that you download.

7 | Integration with McAfee Logon Collector

🗹 Note

If you want to have a separate remote Logon Monitor installation, select the **McAfee Logon Monitor** folder and find the installation program.

How Network Security Platform - Logon Collector integration works

Logon Collector is a Microsoft Windows-based distributed collector. It is an independent service installed in a network, which obtains and preprocesses the network entities data from the Active Directories in the network. The data include users, IP to user bindings, computer groups, new IP addresses, and new computers. This information is published in the form of messages.

This solution does not require any modification to Active Directory or the Active Directory directory schema and requires no agents.

Logon Monitors can be used to poll nearby domain controllers and forward collected information on to the Logon Collector, shortening the distance domain controller communication must travel.

Identity Acquisition Agent (IAA), is deployed on the Network Security Platform side and is used as an interface to listen to the message service where the updates are published by the Logon Collector server. IAA listens to the Logon Collector Active Message Queue (MQ) service and regularly receives new updates from the Logon Collector server.

A listener for receiving the updates is registered with the IAA. The registered listener regularly receives new updates from the Logon Collector through IAA.

All IP to user bindings data are loaded into a newly created Manager cache for the first time. The cache is subsequently updated with the differences on subsequent updates. As all the other components of the Manager can query the Manager cache, it is not required to communicate with the Logon Collector server each time an update happens.

Manager-Logon Collector integration

McAfee Logon Collector (MLC) Server
Sends Update
Active MQ Service
Receives Update
Identity Acquisition Agent (IAA)
Pushes Update
Manager Listener
Updates Cache
Manager MLC Update Cache

Configuration details for Logon Collector integration

This section gives the configuration details for the integration between McAfee® Network Security Manager and Logon Collector server.

Configure integration at the admin domain level

You can enable the integration between the McAfee® Network Security Manager and the Logon Collector server at the admin domain level.

Task

- 1. Navigate to Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow MLC. The **Enable** page is displayed.
- 2. To enable the MLC integration, select the **Enable MLC Integration?** checkbox.
- 3. Enter the Server Name or IP Address and Server Port details.

Enable Logon Collector

lds marked with an asterisk (*) are r	equired.
able	
inable MLC Integration?	
Server Name or IP Address:	-
Server Port:	61641 *
o integrate with MLC, MLC and the Ma	anager must exchange certificates.
Certificates	
Export Certificate	
Export Manager Certificate:	Export to file Open MLC Console
New MLC Certificate: Upload MLC Certificate: Current MLC Certificate:	Upload MLC Certificate Paste Certificate Prowse No file selected. InccgicCaY0gAwiEaglJaPpncYsA9CD9MA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBBQUAME8xCTAHBgNV BAYTADE3MAcGA1UECBMAMQkwBwYDVQQHEwAxCTAHBgNVBacTADE3MAcGA1UECXMA MRYWFA7VDQQDDA1NTENFbWsic2VydmVyMB4XDTE0MDUxCTAHBgNVBacTADE3MAcGA1UECXMA MRYWFA7VDQQDDA1NTENFbWsic2VydmVyMB4XDTE0MDUxCTAHBgNVBAcTADE3MAcG A1UEChMAMQkwBwYDVQQIEwAxCTAHBgNVBAcTADE3MAcG A1UEChMAQkwBwYDVQQLEwAxFjAUBgNVBAMDUJMQ19tbCM22XJ2ZXIwj28wDQYJ Ko2ThvcMAQEBBQADgYDAMIG3AcGBAL53Lt85XehtKgTDydc1Qc1xglv8hxviG35 Say35HV2AyTfP1Uw0K8Hc351v651v614x4FwaQL59F0hL681Pp7/bmKhY6UbeV8G
	TNOHSCKNAGMBAAEwDQY3KozThvcNAQEFBQADgYEAQ+MmDtLXd40j0k/JmLD2V4cx qMkn3Y/SahdyR6d99UB/YSqfQHGFfwNWBGRaUp2gil1JfxV7L159pOTPn/ZE CLVLBe3sNw2ym2a9X8KSitebX6OWaSmZTZSSXt9tqYEBLEKupMofNkjrVWJgNUrA RIIN/D1wwn3QNv96/LDc= END CERTIFICATE Remove

- 4. To complete the integration, you have to synchronize the certificates between the MLC console and the Manager. Click the **Export to file** link to export the Manager certificate to MLC.
- To import the MLC certificate, select Upload MLC Certificate, import the certificate from the location by clicking Choose File.
- 6. Click Save.

To test the connection, click **Test Connection**.

Establishment of trust between Network Security Manager and Logon Collector server

Logon Collector communicates with the McAfee® Network Security Manager through a two-way SSL authentication. This requires the exchange of certificate between the McAfee® Network Security Manager and the Logon Collector server.

Import the Manager certificate into Logon Collector

Export the Manager certificate, save the file to your local directory, and import the file to Logon Collector. Refer to the *McAfee*® *Network Security Manager* documentation for exporting the Manager certificate.

Task

- 1. In the Logon Collector console, select **Menu** \rightarrow **Configuration** \rightarrow **Trusted CAs**.
- 2. Click New Authority to open the New Trusted Authority window.
- 3. Select Import From File, then click Browse to add the exported file saved in your local directory.

You can also use the **Copy/Paste Certificate** option.

4. Click Save.

Import the Logon Collector certificate

By default, Logon Collector is pre-installed with a self-signed certificate. If you have a different certificate signed by a CA, you can import this certificate and replace the existing Logon Collector certificate.

Task

- 1. In the Logon Collector console, select Menu \rightarrow Configuration \rightarrow Server Settings.
- 2. In the Settings Categories section, click Identity Replication Certificate.
- 3. Upload the Logon Collector certificate.
 - a. Copy the Logon Collector certificate from the Logon Collector console and paste it in a newly created file in your local directory.
 - b. Under Import Certificate section, click Upload MLC Certificate in the New MLC Certificate option.
 - c. Select Upload MLC Certificate, then click Browse to add the Logon Collector certificate from your local directory.

What to do next

🗹 Note

If the existing Logon Collector certificate is changed, the clients connecting to Logon Collector like Firewall Enterprise, Network Security Manager need to import the new Logon Collector certificate

Display of Logon Collector details

You can view user information received from the McAfee® Logon Collector server in Attack Log. Refer to the McAfee® Network Security Manager documentation for details.

Display user details (Logon Collector data) in Attack log

If you have configured the Logon Collector you can view user details in the Attack Log page.

Task

- 1. Navigate to Analysis \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Attack Log.
- Double-click the alert for which you want to view the alert details. The alert details panel opens.
- 3. You can view the user details in the **Attacker / Target** section.

User details in Attack Log

🖈 MALWARE: File	Submitted to ATD	for Analysis	© 6
			Export 👻 💭
Summary Details	s Description		
Event			0
Time:	Oct 23, 2019	Domain:	/My Company
Direction:	Outbound	Device:	_169_225
Result:		Interface:	G3/1-G3/2
Relevance:		Matched Policy:	Default Prevention
Application:	😔 нттр	Zone:	
Protocol:	http	VLAN:	
Detection:	Signature	Assigned To:	
Acknowledged:	🛩 Yes	Alert ID:	319289602561443 6469
Attacker / Target			0
IP Address (Port):	Attacker ⊘ ≌ ❶ 1.1.1.10	<u>Target</u>) (80)	〕 1.1.1.9 (48490)
Hostname:			
VM Name:			
VM IP:			
Proxy IP:			
os:			
User:	\user2	luse	er2

The user details (Logon Collector data) are displayed in the **Attack Log** page only if the option to display is enabled in the ems.properties file. If it is not enabled, perform the following steps to enable the option.

- a. In the Manager, using Windows Explorer go to C:\Program Files\McAfee\Network Security Manager\App\config.
- b. Locate the ems.properties file, and right-click and open it using Windows Notepad.
- c. Ensure that the following values are configured (If the entries are not available, add the entries manually): iv.mlc.alert.preprocessor.enabled=true iv.mlc.alert.preprocessor.daemon.enabled=true

Display of Logon Collector details in Network Security Manager reports

Manager reports display the user information received for Logon Collector. Refer to the *McAfee*® *Network Security Manager* documentation for details.

Next Generation custom reports

In the McAfee® Network Security Manager, select **Analysis** \rightarrow **Event Reporting** \rightarrow **Next Generation Reports** \rightarrow **New**.

Option 1

When you select the **Display Options** as **Table**, the **Available Fields** section includes **Src UserId** and **Dest UserId**. The generated custom reports contain the data about the source and destination users.

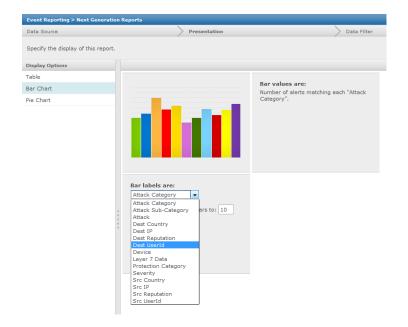
Table properties — Src UserId and Dest UserId fields

Data Source			Presentation	\rangle	Data Filter	
Choose the fields to be	shown in	this report.				
Available Fields		Selected Fields				
Dest IP	0 ^					
Dest OS	Ø					
Dest Phone	0					
Dest Port	Ø					
Dest Reputation	Θ					
Dest UserId	Ø					
Dest VM	Ø		Sele	ct some columns to	display.	
Detection Mechanism	Θ					
Device Type	Θ					
Layer 7 Data	Θ					
Protection Category	0					
Proxy Server IP	Θ					
Relevance	Θ					
Result	Θ	4				
Severity	Θ					
Src APN	Θ					
Src Country	Θ					
Src ESX Server						
Src IMSI	Θ					
Src IP	Θ					
Src OS	Θ					
Src Phone	Θ					
Src Port	Θ					
Src Reputation	Θ					
Src UserId	Θ					

Option 2

When you select the **Display Options** as **Bar Chart**, the **Bar Labels** section includes the **Src UserID** and **Dest UserID** options. The generated custom reports contain the data about the source and destination users.

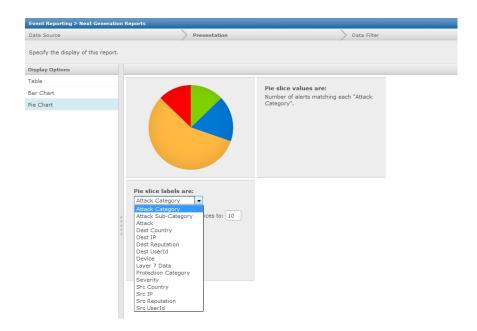
Src UserId and Dest UserId fields options in the bar chart



Option 3

When you select the **Display Options** as **Pie Chart**, the **Pie Slice Labels** section includes the **Src UserID** and **Dest UserID** options. The generated custom reports contain the data about the source and destination users.

Src UserId and Dest UserId fields options in the pie chart



Communication error

A connection error report is shown in the **Error** column of McAfee® Network Security Manager **System Health** monitor in the McAfee® Network Security Manager **Dashboard** tab when there is an improper communication between the McAfee® Network Security Manager server and Logon Collector server. From the McAfee® Network Security Manager **Dashboard** tab, click any error listed in the **System Health** monitor to display the error details in the **System Faults** page.

Error link in the System Health monitor

Domain: /My	Company	Y 🛛 Include Child Domains							_	Last 14 days	<u>▼</u> C /
Top High-R	isk Endpoints		× ×	Top Callback Activity				× ×	Top Attackers		× ×
192.16 192.16 218.5 66	168.201 8.168.6 18.1205 8.1205 18.173.3 8.209.9 28.98.1 9.28.241 166.167 9.28.241	Ver Very High Very High Very High Very High Very High Very High Very High Very High		BlackEnergy Oficia IRCBots Kraken Carberp Darknes Darkshell Gumblar Yzf Mukader				1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	134.154.1.5 1.1.1.9 119.244.157.16 134.154.168.90 165.123.148.156 192.207.184.113 134.154.169.116 103.245.47.20 103.245.47.23 124.38.952.33		393,051 373,852 341,129 275,318 257,430 255,871 32,535 4,935 61]
104.11	7.91.55							-			
Device Sun			× ×	System Health				× ×	Manager Summary		× ×
		Versions	Status	-	Status	Critical	Error	☆ × Warning		1.1. ¹ .1.1	× ×
Device Sun	nmary	Versions Signature Set: 8.7.64.36 Callback		System Health Manager Manager	Status Up	Critical	Error 0	Warning	Manager Summary Manager Software	2016-Jan-21 13:59:58 IS	* ×
Device Sun Device	nmary Model	Versions Signature Set: 8.7.64.36	Status	System Health Manager					Manager Summary Manager Software Version		
Device Sun Device	nmary Model	Versions Signature Set: 8.7.64.36 Callback Detectors: 1220 GAN: () Anti-Malvare: () Software: 8.3.5.2	Status Changes pen	System Health Manager Manager Device	Up Status	<u>3</u> Critical	0 Error	Warning <u>1</u> Warning	Manager Summary Manager Software Version Last Reboot Central Manager	2016-Jan-21 13:59:58 IS Enabled	
Device Sun Device 9200FO	Model IPS-NS9200	Versions Signature Set: 8.7.64.36 Callback Detectors: 1220 GAM: () Anti-Malware: ()	Status	System Health Manager Manager Device hf220-ips (9200FO)	Up Status Active	3 Critical	0 Error 0	Warning Warning 9 ^	Manager Summary Manager Software Version Last Reboot Central Manager Synchronization	2016-Jan-21 13:59:58 IS Enabled	r
Device Sun Device 9200FO	Model IPS-NS9200	Versions Signature Set: 8.7.64.36 Callback Detectors: 1220 GAN: () Anti-Malware: () Software: 8.3.5.2 Signature Set: 8.7.64.36 Callback	Status Changes pen	System Health Hanager Device hf220-ips (9200FO) M8000-HAP (FO-8000)	Up Status Active Active	3 Critical 18 11	0 Error 0	Warning Warning 9 ^ 11	Manager Summary Manager Software Version Last Reboot Central Manager Synchronization	2016-Jan-21 13:59:58 IS Enabled -nsm (10.213.169.1	r 80; 2001:0:0:0:0:0:169:180)
Device Sun Device 9200FO	Model IPS-NS9200	Versions Signature Set: 8.7.64.36 Callback Detectors: 1220 GAM:() Ant:-Malware: () Software: 8.3.5.2 Signature Set: 8.7.64.36 Callback Detectors: 1208	Status Changes pen	System Health Hanager Device hf220-ips (9200FO) M8000-HAP (FO-8000)	Up Status Active Active Active	3 Critical 18 11 6	0 Error 0	Warning Warning 2 1 2 2 2 4 4 4 4 4 4 4	Manager Summary Manager Software Version Last Reboot Central Manager Synchronization Hostname	2016-Jan-21 13:59:58 IST Enabled -nsm (10.213.169.1 Active Version	F 80; 2001:0:0:0:0:0:0:169:180) Latest Version

Error display in the System Faults page

I Undata I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	omain: /My Company 💌	/My	/My Company > Troubleshooting > System Faults ?					
Dominad Signature Sets Image: Session Manage Sessin Manage Session Manage	Undation	Syst	em Faul	ts				
Download Device Software Manual Import Messages from McKefe 2 0 Qale 11-08 12:25:05 IST chand-7300 Enror Alert channel down Automatic Updating > Alert channel down Alert channel down Convert Alert channel down Delete Users and Roles > Setup				Ack.	Date 🔻	Sensor Name	Severity	Fault Type
Manal Import 2. 0 0 206-11-08 12:25:05 IST chand-300 Error Aldtraded down Message from MoRee Automatic Updating Automatic Updating Automatic Updating Automatic Updating Automatic Updating Delete etaperand Ables Image: Control Image: Cont		1.			2016-11-08 12:25:11 IST	chand-7300	Error	Packet log channel down
Automatic Updating Acknowledge Unacknowledge Delete ers and Roles	Manual Import	2.			2016-11-08 12:25:05 IST	chand-7300	Error	Alert channel down
up gration sorting tenance tenance tenance tesatb.tot gration tenance tesatb.tot tesatb.						1		Acknowledge Unacknowledge Delete Clos
gration orting tetrance bibeshooting tetrance system Eaults yetem Faults let Relevance let Relevance let Relevance DR FaultyEug								
inting tenance		I .						
terance blehotoing ealth Check ystem Faults unning Taska lert Relevance ear Activity Log		L						
bleshooting ealth Check ystem Log unning Tasks Iett Relevance ex Activity Log		L						
eath Check ystem Taults unning Tasks lert Relevance ear Activity Log		L						
ystem Log unning Tasks let Relevance ere Activity Log		L						
ystem Faults unning Tasks lert Relevance ex Activity Log		L						
unning Tasks lert Relevance ser Activity Log DR Fallover Log								
lert Relevance ser Activity Log DR Fallover Log								
ser Activity Log DR Fallover Log		L						
DR Fallover Log		L						
		L						
lanager Policy Cache		1						
	Manager Policy Cache	1						
		1						
		1						

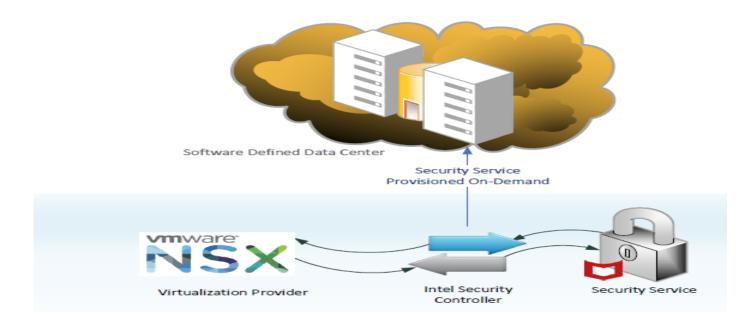
Integration with Intel Security Controller

Intel® Security Controller (henceforth, referred to as Intel Security Controller) is a centralized platform to enable softwaredefined security for software-defined datacenters (SDDC). Intel Security Controller provides a common set of management services, acting as a broker between the security solutions and the virtual infrastructure. You can use Intel Security Controller to provide service such as next-generation Intrusion Prevention System (IPS) virtual infrastructures.

Intel Security Controller integrates with a hypervisor and a networking provider to provide security solutions as a service to your virtual networks. Using Intel Security Controller as a liaison between the security service and its associated components, and the virtualization providers, you are able to provide security services for virtual networks.

To illustrate this, consider a virtual environment that uses VMware vCenter* and VMware ESXi* as its hypervisor and VMware NSX* as its Software Defined Network (SDN) controller to deploy security services on virtual infrastructure.

Intel Security Controller solution overview - current virtualization environment supported



Intel Security Controller is a virtual appliance that you install on an ESXi host. It provides a Java*-based web application for configuration and management. You can deploy Intel Security Controller on existing virtual infrastructure without any configuration changes to those virtual networks.

As the above illustration shows you can also deploy security services on OpenStack* environments.

Security challenges in an SDDC

Consider a large-scale SDDC consisting of hundreds of hosts aggregated under multiple clusters. Virtualization provides flexibility and agility to its users, wherein they can spin up virtual machines (VMs). Users can spin up isolated logical networks as easily as

one can spin up VMs. All these possibilities require no changes in the physical networking configuration. When multiple users spin up new networks and move working VMs across physical boxes in such a large-scale data center, security is threatened.

To match with the capabilities of virtualization solutions, Intel Security Controller can seamlessly, non-intrusively, and nondisruptively integrate security services with existing virtualized environments. This enables network security services to keep pace with the speed, agility, and scalability of virtualization features and solutions.

Deploying next-generation IPS service to virtual networks

If your Manager version is 9.1 or later, you can integrate Network Security Platform with Intel Security Controller to provide nextgeneration IPS service to virtual networks. When you deploy IPS service, Intel Security Controller collaborates with Network Security Platform and VMware NSX such that a special type of virtual IPS Sensor is installed in each protected hypervisor. These virtual Sensors in each hypervisor provide IPS service to the corresponding VMs. In the Manager and Intel Security Controller, the container object of these virtual Sensors are referred to as virtual security system or virtual system. In the hypervisors, these virtual Sensors are installed as ESX agents.

You can use Network Security Manager to manage the instances of virtual security systems. The virtual security system instances are configured similarly but function independently. That is, the virtual security system instances provide IPS to their respective hypervisors but implement the same IPS policy, advanced firewall policy, and other IPS configuration.

To deploy a virtual security system, Intel Security Controller integrates with NSX. This integration also ensures that the relevant traffic is routed through the virtual security system instance for inspection.

The IPS service makes available the relevant next-generation IPS features for your dynamic virtual networks. Deploying the IPS service is non-intrusive and non-disruptive even though the virtual Sensors are deployed in inline mode only. Scaling up or modifying your virtual networks do not warrant any kind user-intervention to your IPS service deployment. Also, any changes to the IPS configuration is automatically applied to all the virtual Sensors. Intel Security Controller does not take any action directly but orchestrates the actions by its integration with NSX, vCenter, Manager, and the virtual security system instances.

• Refer to the latest *Network Security Platform IPS Administration Guide* or *Intel Security Controller Product Guide* for the following information:

• An overview of Intel Security Controller and how it collaborates with McAfee Network Security Platform and NSX to provide IPS service to SDDCs.

• Detailed procedures to deploy next-generation IPS for virtual networks using Intel Security Controller.

To deploy IPS service to SDDCs, you configure Intel Security Controller, Manager, and NSX. To configure NSX, you need vCenter web client.

• For information on how to install and set up Intel Security Controller virtual appliance, see the latest *Intel Security Controller Product Guide*.

- For information on installing and configuring VMware NSX, refer to VMware documentation.
- For information on installing and configuring the virtual infrastructure, refer to the corresponding documentation. For example, for VMware virtual infrastructure, refer to VMware documentation.

Integration with HP Network Automation

McAfee® Network Security Platform 6.0 supports integration with HP Network Automation (formerly Opsware). HP Network Automation is a network automation software that is used to automate network changes, configuration, and compliance management.

HP Network Automation Integration supports communication between the Manager and HP Network Automation server. The communication is about the changes in Sensor configuration due to the pushing of signature set to Sensors.

You can export the Sensor configuration XML file to a particular folder in the Manager. A syslog forwarder message containing the path and name of the XML file (containing the changes in Sensor configuration) is sent to the HP Network Automation server. This is performed by configuring the IP address of the HP Network Automation server in the Manager. Each Sensor has its own Sensor configuration export XML file. So, the filename should contain the Sensor name (Example: Sensor name.xml). Whenever a signature set is pushed to the Sensor, the XML file pertaining to the Sensor is overwritten with the latest Sensor configuration changes and a syslog forwarder message is sent to the HP Network Automation server.

The syslog forwarder message contains the following information:

- Name of the Sensor configuration XML file
- Path on the Manager server where the Sensor configuration XML file is located
- User ID of the user or system who pushed the signature set
- Admin domain name of the Sensor

Configure HP Network Automation in the Manager

You can configure the HP Network Automation server details in the Manager. To do so, perform the following steps.

Task

1. Select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Integration \rightarrow HP Network Automation.

Enable page

/My Company > Integration > HP Network Aut	omation	?
Use this page to push configuration changes for ena and Port, edit notification message.	bling/disabling HP Network Automation Integration,	set directory path for XML file, specify HP Network Automation server IP
Fields marked with an asterisk $(*)$ are required.		
Enable		
Enable HP Network Automation Integration ?	💽 Yes 🔍 No	
Server Name or IP Address	10.10.1.10	*
Server Port:	1099	*
Facilities:	Security/authorization (code 4) <	
XML Directory:	folder/sample.xml	*
Message Preference:	System default (Note: After you click Save and your HP Network customized message instead of the System Defau	Automation configuration is saved, you have the option to create a lt.)
		Save Reset

The **Enable** page is displayed.

2. Fill in the following fields.

Field	Description			
Enable HP Network Automation Integration?	Enables or disables HP Network Automation Integration. Yes to enable; No to disable.			
Server Name or IP Address	Server name or IP address of the HP Network Automation server.			
Server Port	HP Network Automation server port number.			
Facilities	Allows you to select the following from the drop down list:			
	Security/ authorization (code 4)			
	Security/ authorization (code 10)			
	• Log audit (note 1)			
	• Log alert (note 1)			
	Clock daemon (note 2)			
	• Local user 0 (local0)			
	• Local user 1 (local1)			
	• Local user 2 (local2)			
	Local user 3 (local3)			
	Local user 4 (local4)			
	Local user 5 (local5)			
	• Local user 6 (local6)			

Field	Description
	• Local user 7 (local7)
XML Directory	Path on the Manager server where the Sensor configuration XML file is located.
Message Preference	Set the preferred type of message in syslog forwarder.

3. Click Save.

Customizing Message Preference

Click **Save**.

System default is selected, by default.

- a. Select **Customized** to customize the message preference.
- b. Click **Edit** to edit a customized message preference.
- c. Click **Save** to save settings.

Integration of the Manager with SIEM products

You can extend Network Security Platform data to third-party management products. By integrating the Manager with Security Information and Event Management (SIEM) products, you can further process Network Security Platform data. A SIEM product might query the Manager database for information (pull model), or the Manager can send alert and system fault data to syslog servers (push model).

The following are some of the products that Network Security Platform customers are known to have used:

- McAfee
 NitroSecurity products such as NitroView DBM
- ArcSight
- Cisco MARS (Protego)
- eSecurity
- GuardedNet
- NetForensics
- NetlQ
- Network Intelligence
- QRADAR from Q1Labs
- Sequation
- Symantec Remote Importer
- Tenable Networks

Manager data available for SIEM products

There are various methods by which you can extend Manager data to SIEM products. You can choose one based on the data involved and the type of the SIEM product.

The following methods are available:

- Configure the Manager to push data to a SIEM product.
- Configure a SIEM product to pull data from the Manager.
- Query the Manager database for data.

The Manager itself provides multiple methods for backing up configuration and analysis data, including all policy, ignore rule, alert, and any associated packet information. These backup, archive, and export techniques, however, will only allow for the retrieval of the information through the Manager. A SIEM product must access the Manager through the standard system integration techniques.

The following data is available to SIEM products:

• Alert information — When an attack is detected, an alert is raised and the configured response is executed. The alert information contains, where applicable, the specific attack details such as type, attacker and target addresses and ports, packet logs, and outcome.

• Packet log information — A policy can include the requirement to log the packet information that is associated with an alert. This information is a record of the actual flow of traffic that triggered the attack and can be used for detailed packet analysis. This information must be pulled from the Manager database.

• System Faults — Fault information contains the following details:

- Admin domain where the fault is detected
- Sensor name
- Name of the fault
- Type of fault
- Fault owner
- Fault level
- Time of the fault
- Fault source
- Fault component
- Severity
- Description
- Acknowledged flag

To view the list of all fault informational items, select **Manager** \rightarrow **<Admin Domain Name>** \rightarrow **Setup** \rightarrow **Notification** \rightarrow **Faults** \rightarrow **Syslog**. Provide all the details and click **Save.** Then select **Customized** and click **Edit.** You can query faults from the iv_alarm table in the Manager database.

ACL Logs – Access Control Lists

Methods of integration with SIEM products

There are various methods to integrate SIEM products with Network Security Platform and access its information. For example, you can use SNMP traps, syslog, or scripts. The methods that you can use depend on the information that you want to access; not all information is available through all methods. The following is a matrix of the information that you can access from the Manager and the corresponding methods that you can use.

Method Data	SNMP	Syslog	Scripts	SQL query	Report
Alert data	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Packet Log data	No	No	No	Yes	No

Method Data	SNMP	Syslog	Scripts	SQL query	Report
System fault	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
ACL	No	Yes	No	No	No
Audit	No	Yes	No	Yes	Yes

Configure notification methods

For some information, you can configure the Manager to trigger a notification to SIEM products. For example, you can configure the Manager to notify alerts and system faults. You can configure alert notification based on the severity of attacks or on a perattack basis. You can also configure notification per attack in the relevant policy.

Configure notifications based on attack severity

You can configure notifications based on attack severity. To do so, perform the following steps.

Task

- 1. Select Manager \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Setup \rightarrow Notification \rightarrow IPS Events.
- 2. Open the required notification method and select the respective severity level for each of the configured methods.

Configure notifications per attack

You can configure notifications per attack. To do so, perform the following steps.

Task

- 1. In the Manager, navigate to Policy \rightarrow <Admin Domain Name> \rightarrow Intrusion Prevention \rightarrow Policy Types \rightarrow IPS Policies.
- 2. Double-click the required policy.
 - The Attack Definitions page opens.
- 3. Double-click the attack for which you want to configure notifications.
 - The **<Attack Definitions Details>** panel opens on the right side.

- 4. Select the required notification methods in the **Manager Actions** section.
- 5. Click Update.
- Click Save in the Attack Definitions page to save the changes updated to the attack.
 In case of faults, you can use syslog to monitor for specific faults such as Link Failure or Bypass modes.

Templates for syslog, email, and pager

If you are parsing the notifications sent through email, script, or pager, then McAfee recommends that you define your custom message template. Default template may change in newer releases and it may break your parsing algorithms.

The following tables describe the variables used in the various message templates.

🗹 Note

"%" "/" and "\$" are reserved characters. Do not use them as a delimiter in custom templates.

Variable name	Description
ALERT_ID	Unique ID assigned to an alert by the Manager.
ALERT_TYPE	The type of the attack that triggered the alert. The value, for example, can be exploit, host sweep, or port scan.
ATTACK_TIME	Time when the attack was detected.
ATTACK_NAME	Name of the attack that triggered the alert.
ATTACK_ID	The Network Security Platform ID for the attack.
ATTACK_SEVERITY	System impact severity posed by the attack: high, medium, low, or informational.
ATTACK_SIGNATURE	Signature that matched the attack traffic (applicable only to signature-based attacks)
ATTACK_CONFIDENCE	Higher confidence means the lower the chance for the attack to be a false-positive.
ADMIN_DOMAIN	The admin domain to which the Sensor that detected the attack belongs.
ATTACK_COUNT	The number of times the attack was detected within the throttle duration.

Variable name	Description
SENSOR_NAME	The Sensor that detected the attack.
INTERFACE	The Sensor's interface where the attack was detected.
SENSOR_CLUSTER_MEMBER	The Sensor in a fail-over pair that detected the attack.
SOURCE_IP	IP address of the host from where the attack originated.
SOURCE_PORT	The source port number of the attack traffic.
DESTINATION_IP	IP address of the targetted host.
DESTINATION_PORT	The destination port number of the attack traffic.
CATEGORY	General attack type.
SUB_CATEGORY	Within the attack type, a specific classification such as virus and Trojan horse.
DIRECTION	Whether the traffic was inbound or outbound.
RESULT_STATUS	Whether the attack was successful, blocked, or a failed attempt.
DETECTION_MECHANISM	The method used to detect the attack. Each method relates to a specific attack category. Some of these methods are signagure, threshold, statistical anomaly, and flow corelation.
APPLICATION_PROTOCOL	The application protocol found in the attack traffic.
NETWORK_PROTOCOL	The transport protocol used for the attack traffic.
RELEVANCE	Information whether the attack is relevant for the targetted host based on information from McAfee Vulnerability Manager.
QUARANTINE_END_TIME	Time when an attacking host will be out of quarantine.
SENSOR_ALERT_UUID	Unique ID assigned to an alert by the Sensor.

Variable name	Description					
SOURCE_VM_ESX_NAME	The VMware ESX server that hosts the VMware from which the attack traffic originated.					
SOURCE_VM_NAME	The VMware host from which the attack traffic originated.					
TARGET_VM_NAME	The targetted VMware host for the attack.					
TARGET_VM_ESX_NAME	The VMware ESX server that hosts the targetted VMware.					
URI_INFO	The URI found in the attack traffic.					
VLAN_ID	The VLAN tagged with the attack traffic.					
DEST_APN	Applicable only to attacks targetted at data-enabled mobile equipments such as a mobile phone or a tablet PC.					
	The Access Point Name (APN) of the targetted mobile equipment.					
DEST_IMSI	Applicable only to attacks targetted at data-enabled mobile equipments such as a mobile phone or a tablet PC.					
	The International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI) of the targetted mobile equipment.					
DEST_PHONE_NUMBER	Applicable only to attacks targetted at data-enabled mobile equipments such as a mobile phone or a tablet PC.					
	The phone number of the targetted mobile equipment.					
SRC_APN	Applicable only to attacks from data-enabled mobile equipments such as a mobile phone or a tablet PC.					
	The Access Point Name (APN) of the mobile equipment that is the source of the attack traffic.					
SRC_IMSI	Applicable only to attacks from data-enabled mobile equipments such as a mobile phone or a tablet PC.					
	The International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI) ID of the source mobile equipment.					
SRC_PHONE_NUMBER	Applicable only to attacks from data-enabled mobile equipments such as a mobile phone or a tablet PC.					

Variable name	Description	
	The phone number of the source mobile equipment.	
LAYER_7_DATA	The application-layer data found in the attack traffic.	
ZONE_NAME	Zone from which the alert was raised. Applicable only for NTBA alerts.	
SOURCE_OS	Source OS name	
DEST_OS	Destination OS name	
MALWARE_FILE_TYPE	Malware file type	
MALWARE_FILE_LENGTH	Malware file length	
MALWARE_FILE_NAME	Malware file name	
MALWARE_FILE_MD5_HASH	Malware file MD5 hash	
MALWARE_VIRUS_NAME	Malware virus name	
MALWARE_CONFIDENCE	Malware confidence	
MALWARE_DETECTION_ENGINE	Malware detection engine	

The following table describes the fault template variables.

Name	Description				
ADMIN_DOMAIN	The admin domain associated with the fault message.				
FAULT_NAME	Name of the fault.				
FAULT_TYPE	The state of the fault, whether it is created, acknowledged, or cleared.				
OWNER_ID	The Sensor ID where the fault occurred. This field is not applicable to Manager faults.				

Name	Description
OWNER_NAME	The user-defined name of the Sensor where the fault occurred. For Manager fault, the value is 'Manager.'
FAULT_LEVEL	The level of the fault. Whether it occurred at the Manager system level, Sensor level, or Sensor interface level.
FAULT_TIME	Timestamp of when the fault occurred.
FAULT_SOURCE	Whether the fault was sent by the Sensor to the Manager or it was generated by the Manager.
FAULT_COMPONENT	The component where the fault occurred.
SEVERITY	Whether the fault is critical, an error, warning, informational, or unknown.
DESCRIPTION	The description as found in the faultNameAndText.properties file.
ACK_INFORMATION	If true, the fault has been acknowledged by someone.
SENSOR_NAME	The user-defined name of the Sensor where the fault occurred.

The following table describes Firewall access rule template variables.

Name	Description					
SENSOR_NAME	The Sensor that parsed the traffic matching the Firewall access rule.					
ADMIN_DOMAIN	The admin domain to which the Sensor belongs.					
INTERFACE	The interface where the matching traffic was detected.					
ACL_ACTION	Whether the traffic was inspected, dropped, denied, or ignored.					
SOURCE_IP	The IP address of the host from which the traffic originated.					

Name	Description	
SOURCE_PORT	The source port number of the traffic that matched the Firewall access rule.	
DESTINATION_IP	The IP address of the destination host for the traffic.	
DESTINATION_PORT	The destination port number of the traffic that matched the Firewall access rule.	
APPLICATION_PROTOCOL	The layer 7 protocol associated with the traffic that matched the Firewall access rule.	
NETWORK_PROTOCOL	The IP protocol that matched.	
ALERT_DURATION	The number of Firewall syslog messages that were suppressed.	
ALERT_COUNT	The number of Firewall syslog messages that were forwarded.	
ALERT_DIRECTION	Whether the traffic that matched was inbound or outbound.	
APPLICATION	The layer 7 application associated with the matched traffic.	
ACL_DESCRIPTION	The user-entered description of the Firewall policy.	
SOURCE_HOSTNAME	The host DNS name from which the traffic originated.	
DESTINATION_HOSTNAME	The host DNS name to which the traffic is destined.	
SOURCE_COUNTRY	The country from which the traffic originated.	
DESTINATION_COUNTRY	The country to which the traffic is destined to.	
ACL_POLICY	The name of the Firewall policy.	
ACL_RULE_NUMBER	The order of the rule in the effective list of Firewall access rules.	

Integration for fault information

Fault provides information about the current status of your Network Security Platform installation. Fault notification can be configured based on the severity of a fault.

A complete list of faults is available in the <Manager install directory>/config/FaultNameAndText.properties file.

You can use the following methods to forward fault information:

- SNMP traps
- Syslog
- Scripts
- Email
- Pager

If you are parsing fault notifications then it is recommended that you customize the notification that suits your needs.

🗹 Note

Default fault notification format may change in newer releases of the Manager.

The following table details the methods to forward fault information.

Method	Information
SNMP traps	 You need the following to configure the Manager to send SNMP traps: SNMP trap daemon to receive traps SNMP trap server IP address SNMP trap server Community string SNMP trap server port
	 Note: If you are using SNMPv3 then you might also need the following: Authentication type authentication password Encryption type Privacy password
Syslog	You can configure the Manager to notify syslog servers for alerts, system faults, Firewall access rule matches, and user-activity audit for the Manager. If you enable syslog notification for Firewall access rules, and if you have enabled Firewall access rules logging per Sensor, the Manager sends a syslog message to the configured syslog server for each connection attempt matching an rule. This enables you to track your users' connection attempts and the results. You need the following to configure the Manager to forward syslog messages: • Syslog server IP

10| Integration of the Manager with SIEM products

Method	Information					
	 Communication port number Syslog facility 					
	Note: Syslog is based on UDP. Therefore, the Manager doesn't retransmit data in case of network connectivity issues or if the syslog server is unreachable.					
	Configuring syslog notification involves the following steps:					
	1. To forward alerts to a syslog server, configure the syslog details in the Manager. See McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide.					
	 To forward fault notifications to a syslog server, configure the syslog details at Manager → <admir domain="" name=""> → Setup → Notification → Faults → Syslog. See the Manager's Help for the step</admir> To forward ACL rule matches to a syslog server, configure the syslog details in the Manager. See <i>McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide.</i> To forward user-activity details of the Manager server to a syslog, configure the details at Manager → <admin domain="" name=""> → Setup → Notification → User Activity → Syslog. See the Manager' Help for the steps.</admin> 					
Email and	You can configure the Manager to do the following:					
pager	Notify alerts and faults through email or pager.Send scheduled reports through email.					
	Note the following:					
	Make sure the antivirus application is not blocking outgoing emails.					
	• Make sure you have enabled mail relay on the SMTP server.					
	Configuring email notification involves the following steps:					
	1. Configure the email server settings in the Manager. The following features use this email server settings:					
	• Reports					
	Fault notification					
	Alert notificationPager					
	See the <i>McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide</i> for the details.					
	 To enable e-mail notification only for specific attacks, edit those attacks in the relevant policies. See McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide. 					

10 | Integration of the Manager with SIEM products

Method	Information						
	3. For alert notification through email or pager, configure the email notification and the email						
	recipients in the Manager. See McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide						
	4. To enable fault notification through email or pager, configure the email notification and the email						
	recipients in the Manager. Go to Manager \rightarrow <admin domain="" name=""> \rightarrow Setup \rightarrow Notification \rightarrow</admin>						
	Faults \rightarrow E-mail . See the Manager's Help for the steps.						
	5. To enable the Manager to email auto-generated reports, configure the recipients in the General						
	Settings of the Reports module. See McAfee Network Security PlatformProduct Guide.						
Scripts	Scripts are useful for complex integrations. Scripts are a sequence of commands that can use template variables. The Manager replaces these variables with the relevant values before executing the command For example, you can use scripts to extract information from the alerts and send customized emails for specific conditions.						
	Scripts can invoke another batch file and provide variables as command line parameters for the invoked program. For more information, see Specifying script parameters, <i>McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide.</i> . Also see the Readme.doc at <manager directory="" installed="">\McAfee\Network Security Manager\App\diag\ AlertNotificationScript.</manager>						
Suppression	While configuring some of the notification methods, you can specify the suppression time value. Suppression time is the time (minutes and seconds) the Manager should wait after an alert notification has been sent before sending another alert notification. The default and minimum value is 10 minutes. Suppression time is useful to avoid sending excessive notifications when there is heavy attack traffic.						
	The specify suppression time value for the following notification methods:						
	• Email						
	• Pager						
	Scripts						
	Suppression time value does not apply to syslog and SNMP. All events are forwarded.						

Integration using reports

In the Reports module of the Manager, you can schedule reports on a daily or weekly basis. You can configure the Manager to email the reports. You need to create relevant reports and parse CSV files. See the *McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide* for details.

Data mining

Applications that require the real-time synchronization of Manager data, including packet logs, are best served by performing regular SQL queries to the Manager database. An example would be Security Information and Event Management (SIEM) applications. SIEM applications can use direct database-based integration. That is, they can poll the Manager database and monitor specific tables for new records. Applications that do not require the packet log data that is associated with an alert can use the push techniques of SNMP or Syslog.

For applications that are more ad-hoc in nature such as reports, an efficient approach would be to copy the database and manipulate it off-line. The less work the database has to do within the Manager, the better will be the performance of the Manager. Therefore, by cloning or copying the database, operations such as large queries or creating additional indices can be performed on the off-line database. In addition to just copying the files from the Manager, you can use the Manager's data back-up feature (i.e. back-up, alert & packet log archival). See *McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide* for details about these features.

🗹 Note

Alert information is stored in the iv_alert and iv_alert_data tables. Packet captures for alerts are stored in the iv_packetlog table.

You can query Manager database tables for several types of IV_<variable> information.

The following table describes IV_Alert information.

Field	Туре	Null	Key	Default value	Description/Comments
uuid	bigint(20)	NO	MUL	Unique	Unique ID number of message
state	smallint(6)	YES	MUL		state of alert (NULL = closed, 1 = new, others) 1: unacknowledged 10: acknowledged
markForDelete	char(1)	YES			First in line for deletion during old-alert purging.
lastModTime	timestamp	NO		Current time stamp.	the last time this alert was modified in the database

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/Comments
lastModUserRef	char(32)	YES			User who last modified the alert in the database
assignedUserRef	char(32)	YES			To whom the alert is assigned to for action.
sensorId	int(11)	NO	PRI		The ID of the Sensor raising the alert. This ID is assigned to a Sensor by the Manager.
vsaId	int(11)	NO		-1	The VSA ID of the VIDS to which the alert applies
vidsId	int(11)	YES			The VSA ID of the VIDS to which the alert applies
liId	int(11)	NO		-1	The LI ID to which the alert applies.
subscriberIdl	int(11)	YES			Subscriber1, subscriber2, and so on are the list of nested admin domains, with
subscriberId2	int(11)	YES			the last non-null id being the admin domain to whom this VIDS belongs, and
subscriberId3	int(11)	YES			the earlier ones being its parents going back to the root admin domain ID. Alerts
subscriberId4	int(11)	YES			for the root subscriber will have all these columns as NULL.
alertType	smallint(6)	NO			 The type of alert, where: 1 = signature 2 = statistical anomaly 3 = threshold anomaly 4 = port scan 5 = host sweep 6 = throttle summary
categoryId	int(11)	YES			The attack category id of the alert.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/Comments
subCategoryId	int(11)	YES			The attack sub-category id of the alert.
detectionMechanism	int(11)	YES			The method used to detect the attack.
attackId	int(11)	NO			The 24-bit part of the attack ID.
creationTime	timestamp	NO	MUL		The timestamp on the Sensor when this alert raised.
emsReceivedTime	timestamp	YES			The timestamp on the Manager when this alert is received. This may be greater than creation time if alert was in Sensor buffer due to connectivity issues with Manager.
severity	tinyint(4)	NO			High, Medium, Low, Informational.
alertDuration	int(11)	YES			If alerts are suppressed, then this many alerts were suppressed for this duration before this one. These are only filled for a throttle summary alert.
slotId	smallint(6)	NO			The slot number of the port from which the alert was raised.
portId	smallint(6)	NO			The port number of the port from which the alert was raised.
alertCount	int(11)	YES			Greater than 1 in case of throttled alerts.
packetLogId	bigint(20)	YES			The packet log ID corresponding to this alert.
packetLogGrpId	bigint(20)	NO			The packet log group ID corresponding to this alert.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/Comments
packetLogSeq	int(11)	YES			A sequence number within the packet log stream.
lastByteReqStreamOffset	int(11)	YES			For alerts that have previous-256-byte fragments, the offset of the last byte in that packet in the request streams.
lastByteRespStreamOffset	int(11)	YES			For alerts that have previous-256-byte fragments, the offset of the last byte in that packet in the response streams.
hasPreviousBuffer	char(1)	YES			Whether a previous-256-byte fragment was sent.
signatureId	smallint(6)	YES			The signature ID within the attack ID.
ivProtocolId	int(11)	YES			The protocol ID from protocols.xml file.
networkProtocolId	smallint(6)	YES			The protocol ID from the IP-header of the packet.
sourceIPAddr	char(32)	YES			The IP address of the source of the attack.
sourcePort	int(11)	YES			The source port for the attack traffic.
targetIPAddr	char(32)	YES			The IP address of the target fo the attack.
targetPort	int(11)	YES			The destination port of the attack traffic.
confidence	tinyint(4)	YES			The confidence level of the signature that was matched.
					Inverse of BTP value. High confidence means low BTP.
					Confidence value ranges from 1-7.

				Default	
Field	Туре	Null	Key	value	Description/Comments
					<3: high confidence
					3-5: Medium
					>=6: Low
					Note: When the BTP value is 0, there is no corresponding confidence value for the attack.
protoQuall	int(11)	YES			
protoQual2	int(11)	YES			
protoParsingState	int(11)	YES			The inner state of the protocol parsing machine.
direction	tinyint(4)	YES			Wether the attack was inbound or outbound.
suppressedSigIds	int(11)	YES			Corresponding signature IDs of the alerts that were suppressed.
nidId	int(11)	YES			Global VIDS network ID from where the alert is raised.
firstAlarmTime	timestamp	YES			
accumulateTime	int(11)	YES			
thresholdId	int(11)	YES			
observedValue	bigint(20)	YES			The threshold measurement which triggered the alarm.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/Comments
thresholdValue	int(11)	YES			The actual threshold value that was crossed.
thresholdDuration	int(11)	YES			The duration over which the value was measured.
attackIdRef	char(20)	YES			The Network Security Platform attack ID reference.
resultSetValue	int(11)	YES			Whether the attack succeeded, blocked, failed, suspicious and so on. 100 ATTACK_SUCCESSFUL 200 INCONCLUSIVE 300 ATTACK_FAILED 400 NOT_APPLICABLES 999 ATTACK_BLOCKED 888 DOS_BLOCKING_ACTIVATED 10100 BLOCKING_SIMULATED_ATTACK SUCCESSFUL 10200 BLOCKING_SIMULATED_INCONCLUSIVE 10300 BLOCKING_SIMULATED_ATTACK_FAILED 10400 BLOCKING_SIMULATED_N
inlineDropAction	int(11)	YES			Information used by the Sensor to tell the Manager whether the attack was blocked or not. INLINE_ACTION_PACKET_DROPPED = 0x01; INLINE_ACTION_BROWSER_MATCHED = 0x04;

Field	Туре	Null	Key	Default value	Description/Comments
	.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,				INLINE_ACTION_BROWSER_FAILED = 0x08; INLINE_ACTION_SMART_BLOCK = 0x80; INLINE_ACTION_IPS_SIMULATION = 0x40;
relevance	char(1)	YES			 Y/N/U. It is related to vulnerability scanner reports. Y – relevant. As per vulnerability report, this host is vulnerable to attack in the context. N – not relevant. As per vulnerability report, this host is not vulnerable to attack in the context. U – unknown. U is very common. Y and N shows up in TA only if the Manager has integration with MVM or they have imported vulnerability report.
VLANId	int(11)	YES			The VLAN found in the attack traffic.
policyid	char(20)	YES			The Network Security Platform policy that was applied on the Sensor interface.
hostIsolationState	tinyint(4)	NO			Whether the attacking host is quarantined or not. This action is based on the attack quarantine settings.
sensorAlertUUID	bigint(20)	NO	PRI		Unique ID sent by Sensor.
sourceUserId	int(11)	YES			User name of the attacking host.
destinationUserId	int(11)	YES			User name of the targetted host.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/Comments
sourceOSId	int(11)	YES			The ID of the operating system on the source host of the attack.
destinationOSId	int(11)	YES			The ID of the operating system on the target of the attack.
sourceOSId1	tinyint(4)	YES			
sourceOSId2	tinyint(4)	YES			
sourceOSId3	tinyint(4)	YES			
sourceOSId4	tinyint(4)	YES			
destinationOSId1	tinyint(4)	YES			
destinationOSId2	tinyint(4)	YES			
destinationOSId3	tinyint(4)	YES			
destinationOSId4	tinyint(4)	YES			
zoneId	int(11)	YES			Zone in which the alert was raised. Applicable only to NTBA alerts.
deviceType	tinyint(3)	NO			IPS Sensor – 0 NTBA Appliance – 1 HIPS Sensor – 2
sourceReputation	smallint(6)	YES			Reputation of the source host of the attack. This reputation is fetched from McAfee Global Threat Intelligence. Low: good <14: minimal risk.

				Default	
Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	value	Description/Comments
					15-29: unverified,
					30-49:medium risk
					>49: high risk
					high: bad
destinationReputation	smallint(6)	YES			Reputation of the targeted host.
					Same as sourceReputation
sourceGeoLocation	char(32)	YES			Geographical location of the source host
					from McAfee Global Threat Intelligence.
					two-digit country code. CN:China, US:USA, IN:India.
destinationGeoLocation	char(32)	YES			Geographical location of the targeted host.
					Same as above
exporterId	int(11)	NO		-1	This is relevant only for NTBA alerts. This is the ID of the exporter.
interfaceId	int(11)	NO		-1	
sourceVmId	bigint(20)	NO			
targetVmId	bigint(20)	NO			
appId	int(11)	NO		-1	The ID of the layer 7 application that matched a Firewall access rule.
appCategoryId	int(11)	NO			The ID of the application category that matched a Firewall access rule.
proxyIpFlag	smallint(6)	NO			

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/Comments
appRisk	int(11)	NO			
xffTarget	smallint(6)	NO			
tag	int(11)	NO		-1	The userld for which the alert has been assigned, (-1 in case it is unassigned).
srcPhone	char(16)	YES			Applicable only to attacks from data- enabled mobile equipments such as a mobile phone or a tablet PC. The phone number of the source mobile equipment.
srcIMSI	char(16)	YES			Applicable only to attacks from data- enabled mobile equipments such as a mobile phone or a tablet PC. The International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI) ID of the source mobile equipment.
STCAPN	varchar(120)	YES			Applicable only to attacks from data- enabled mobile equipments such as a mobile phone or a tablet PC. The Access Point Name (APN) of the mobile equipment that is the source of the attack traffic.
destPhone	char(16)	YES			Applicable only to attacks targetted at data-enabled mobile equipments such as a mobile phone or a tablet PC. The phone number of the targetted mobile equipment.
destIMSI	char(16)	YES			Applicable only to attacks targetted at data-enabled mobile equipments such as a mobile phone or a tablet PC.

				Default	
Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	value	Description/Comments
					The International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI) of the targetted mobile
					equipment.
destAPN	varchar(120)	YES			Applicable only to attacks targetted at
					data-enabled mobile equipments such
					as a mobile phone or a tablet PC.
					The Access Point Name (APN) of the
					targetted mobile equipment.
fileType	int(11)	YES			Malware File type
fileLength	int(11)	YES			Malware File length
fileMD5Hash	Char(32)	YES			Malware File MD5 Hash
virusName	Varchar(256)	YES			Malware Virus Name
fileUUID	Varchar(16)	YES			Malware file id
		. 25			
malwareScore	Int(11)	YES			Malware confidence
detectionEngine	Int(11)	YES			Malware detection engine
srcDNSName	Varchar(255)	YES			Source DNS name
destDNSName	Varchar(255)	YES			Destination DNS Name

The following table describes IV_PacketLog information.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default	Description/Comments
sensorId	int(11)	NO	Primary		The ID of the Sensor raising the alert. This ID is assigned to a Sensor by the Manager.
packetLogId	bigint(20)	NO	Primary		The packet log ID corresponding to this alert.
packetLogGrpId	bigint(20)	NO	MUL		The packet log group ID corresponding to this alert.
packetLogType	char(1)	NO	Primary		F in case of a fragment; P in case of a packet.
packetLogSeq	int(11)	NO	Primary		A sequence number within the packet log stream. In case of fragments, this is 1 for request logs, and 2 for response logs.
lastReqByteStreamOffset	int(11)	NO	Primary		The offset in the TCP stream of the last byte of a request fragment. It is 0 for packet logs.
lastRespByteStreamOffset	int(11)	NO	Primary		The offset in the TCP stream of the last byte of a response fragment. It is 0 for packet logs.
markForDelete	char(1)	YES			First in line for deletion during old-alert purging.
vsaId	int(11)	YES			The VSA ID of the VIDS to which the alert applies
vidsId	int(11)	NO			The VSA ID of the VIDS to which the alert applies

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default	Description/Comments
slotId	smallint(6)	NO			The slot number of the port from which the log packet originated.
portId	smallint(6)	NO			The port number of the port from which the log packet originated.
creationTime	timestamp	NO	MUL	Current time stamp	The time stamp on the log.
creationSeqNumber	int(11)	YES			The sequecne number used to differentiate records with the same creation time.
sensorPacketlogUUID	bigint(20)	NO	Primary		Unique ID generated by the Sensor for each packet log.
packetData	longblob	YES			The actual packet or fragment data.

The following table describes IV_Sensor information.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/Comments
sensor_id	int(11)	NO	Primary		The ID is assigned to a Sensor by the Manager.
subscriber_id	int(11)	NO	MUL		The ID of the admin domain to which the Sensor belongs.
last_modified	timestamp	NO		Current time stamp	When this record was last modified.
name	varchar(255)	NO	MUL		User-defined name of the Sensor.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/Comments
description	varchar(255)	YES			User-provided description for the Sensor.
location	varchar(255)	YES			An arbitrary string filled in by the user.
contact	varchar(255)	YES			An arbitrary string filled in by user.
nepk	varchar(36)	YES	MUL		A pointer to the Lumos network element record for this Sensor.
shared_secret	varchar(255)	YES			The shared secret to be used to initialize keys for the Sensor.
device_class	tinyint(4)	YES			Not used.
model	varchar(50)	YES			The main model name for this Sensor; populated after Sensor discovery.
sub_model	tinyint(4)	YES			The sub model name for this Sensor; populated after Sensor discovery.
serial_number	varchar(50)	YES			Sensor's serial number; populated after Sensor discovery.
slot_count	tinyint(4)	YES			The number of slots in the chassis.
tempSensorCount	tinyint(4)	YES			The number of the temperature Sensors on the device.
shellMgrCount	tinyint(4)	YES			The number of the shell managers.
fanCount	tinyint(4)	YES			The number of the fans.
powerSupplyCount	tinyint(4)	YES			The number of power supplies.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/Comments
ip_address	varchar(32)	YES			The user-assigned IP address for the Sensor's management port.
command_port	int(11)	YES			The port on which the Sensor contacts the Manager for its command channel.
transport_type	varchar(10)	YES			Whether TCP or UDP.
snmp_version	varchar(5)	YES			Whether v1, v2c or v3.
foPeerAddress	varchar(32)	YES			The IP address of the peer Sensor.
failover_enable	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	Whether failover is enabled or not.
failopen_enable	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	Whether failopen is enabled when the Sensor is in failover mode.
peer_sensorid	int(11)	YES			The Sensor ID of the peer Sensor.
real_time_update_allowed	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	Whether real-time updates to the Sensor are allowed.
sch_update_allowed	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	Whether schedule updates to the Sensor are allowed.
sensorReservedVLANId	int(11)	YES			The VLAN ID reservered for the Sensor. If this value is -1, then there is no VLAN ID reserved.
isFOEnforced	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	ls the Sensor, a failover-only Sensor.
createDefaultLogicConfig	enum('Y','N')	NO		Y	

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/Comments
tacacsConfig	tinyint(4)	YES			Whether the tacacs configuration is inherited from the admin domain. 0 means yes.
inheritMPE	tinyint(4)	NO		0	Status of MPE configuration inherited from the admin domain. 0 means yes. inheritHQ Status of HQ config inherited from AD. 0-No 0
inheritHQ	tinyint(4)	NO		0	Status of HQ configuration inherited from the admin domain. 0 means no.
config_flags	int(11)	YES			A flag set maintained by the Sensor config service indicating an internal maintenance state.
lastRebootTime	timestamp	NO			Time when the Sensor rebooted last as per the information in the Manager.
lastSignatureUpdateTime	timestamp	NO			The latest time that a sigset update went through successfully.
isRateLimitEnabled	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	Whether the rate limit feature is enabled.
lastRLmodifiedTS	timestamp	NO			Time when the rate limit feature was last modified.
sw_version	varchar(25)	YES			The Sensor software version.
fips_mode	int(11)	NO		0	Whether the Sensor is FIPS compliant or not.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/Comments
strong_crypto_version	varchar(5)	YES			
download_mode	tinyint(4)	NO		0	Whether the Sensor uses offline download(1) or online download mode (0).
inheritArtemis	tinyint(4)	NO		0	Status of File Reputation feature configuration inherited from the admin domain. 0 means no.
foStpForwardStatus	tinyint(4)	NO		2	This column is now deprecated.
lastSoftwareUpdateTime	timestamp	NO			Time when the Sensor was last successfully updated.

The following table describes IV_Categories information.

Field	Туре	Null	Key	Default value	Description/comments
categoryId	int(11)	Yes			Represents a category ID. The possible values are 111, 112, 113, and 114.
displayableName	varchar(64)	Yes			The displayableName for each categoryld is provided below:
					111 - Exploit112 - Volume DOS
					113 - Reconnaissance114 - Policy violation
description	varchar(64)	Yes			The description for each categoryld is provided below:
					111 - Exploit category
					112 - Volume DOS category
					113 - Reconnaissance category

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/comments
					114 - Policy violation category

The following table describes IV_NTBA information.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/comments
nba_id	int (11)	NO	PRI		The unique ID that the Manager assigns to an NTBA device.
subscriber_id	int (11)	NO	MUL		ID of the admin domain that owns the NTBA device.
last_modified	timestamp	NO		Current time stamp	Time when this record was last modified.
Name	varchar (255)	NO	MUL		User-specified name of the NTBA device.
description	varchar (255)	YES			Description of the NTBA device that a user optionally provides.
location	varchar (255)	YES			An arbitrary string entered by the user.
contact	varchar (255)	YES			An arbitrary string entered by the user.
shared_secret	varchar (255)	YES			The shared secret to be used to initialize keys for this Sensor.
device_class	tinyint (4)	YES			NTBA device class.
model	varchar (50)	YES			NTBA device model.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/comments
sub_model	tinyint (4)	YES			The submodel that is populated after device discovery.
serial_number	varchar (50)	YES			The serial number of the device populated after device discovery.
ip_address	varchar (32)	YES			User-assigned IP address to the NTBA device management port.
command_protocol	varchar (32)	YES			١N
command_port	int (11)	YES			The port on which the NTBA device contacts the Manager for its command channel.
ne_pk	varchar (36)	YES	MUL		A pointer to the Lumos network element record for this NTBA device.
real_time_update_allowed	enum('Y','N')	NO		n	Whether real-time updates to the NTBA device are allowed.
sch_update_allowed	enum('Y','N')	NO		n	Whether schedule updates to the NTBA device are allowed.
config_flags	int (11)	YES			A flag set maintained by the NTBA device config service indicating an internal maintenance state.
last_reboot_time	timestamp	NO			Time when the NTBA device rebooted last as per the information in the Manager.
last_signature_update_time	timestamp	NO			The latest time that a sigset update went through successfully.
sw_version	varchar (25)	YES			The NTBA device software version.

Field	Туре	Null	Key	Default value	Description/comments
fips_mode	int (11)	NO	0		Whether the NTBA device is FIPS compliant or not.

The following table describes IV_Alarm information.

Field	Туре	Null	Key	Default	Description/comments
Id	char (36)	NO	PRI		The alarm PK from Lumos.
Name	varchar (128)	YES			The name of the alarm.
Source	varchar (255)	NO			A human-readable string version of the alarm source entity (not used to reconstruct the alarm).
sourceBlob	blob	YES			Serialized copy of the actual source entity object.
conditionType	varchar (128)	YES			Name of the alarm condition, for example, down and lowmem
Туре	varchar (128)	YES			Type of alarm, for example, management, equipment.
Severity	varchar (128)	YES			Severity of the alarm, for example, critical, major, minor, and so on.
lastUpdated	timestamp	NO		Time stamp	When this alarm was last modified.
creationTime	timestamp	NO		Time stamp	When this alarm was created.
serviceAffecting	char (1)	NO			Indication to the user whether this will interrupt service. For example, a condition type of "down" will but "lowmem" may not.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default	Description/comments
autoCleared	char (1)	NO			Indication whether the Manager will auto-clear this alarm eventually.
acknowledged	char (1)	NO			Whether this alarm has been acknowledged by a user.
additionalText	text	YES			Additional text provided by alarm-creating component.
additionalData	blob	YES			Additional data provided by alarm-creating component.
customData	blob	YES			Used by user agents to piggyback client data on the alarm.
occurrenceCount	int (11)	YES			The number of times the alarm occurred.
lastUpdateTime	bigint (20)	YES			The last time this record was updated.
sensorId	int (11)	YES			Unique ID assigned to the Sensor by the Manager.

The following table describes iv_subcategories information.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/comments
idnum	int(11)	No	Primary		The unique ID number of the subcategory.
category_name	varchar(50)	No	Primary		The name of the subcategory.
parent_category	varchar(50)				The corresponding parent category name.
display_name	varchar(50)				The displayable name of the subcategory.
description	text				Description of the subcategory.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/comments
release_version	varchar(20)	No	Primary		Version of the signature set.
ts	date				Time stamp when a row was last updated.

The following table describes iv_vids information.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/comments
vids_id	int(11)	No	Primary		The primary key. This is assigned by the Manager.
subscriber_id	int(11)	No	MUL		ID of the corresponding admin domain. This is a foreign key.
entity_subscriber_id	int(11)	No			
parent_id	int(11)	Yes	MUL		ID of the parent VIDS.
last_modified	Timestamp	No			When this record was last modified.
last_resourcechildchanged	Timestamp				
last_resourcetreechanged	Timestamp				
name	varchar(255)	No			User-specified name of the VIDS.
description	varchar(255)	Yes			User-specified description of the VIDS.
intftype	enum ('C','D','V','F','B')	No			Whether the interface is of type CIDR, dedicated, or VLAN.
vids_level	tinyint(4)	No			0 for Sensor; 1 for interface; 2 for subinterface.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default value	Description/comments
sensor_id	int(11)	Yes			ID of the Sensor on which this VIDS is created.
wasp_inherit_status	tinyint(4)	No		0	
vsa_id	int(11)	Yes			This column is deprecated.
network_link_id	int(11)	Yes			The network link on which this VIDS is created.
has_anomaly	enum('Y', 'N')	No		N	Whether anomaly detection is enabled for this VIDS.
ids_profile_id	varchar(20)	Yes			The IDS profile ID. References iv_policy(policy_id)
recon_policy_id	int(11)	Yes			Foreign key (recon_policy_id) References iv_recon_policy(recon_policy_id)
anomaly_profile_id	varchar(20)	Yes			The Anomaly profile ID.
ref_vids_id	int(11)	Yes	MUL		In an interface group, ref_vids_id is set to the primary VIDS of the group; otherwise set to nil.
intf_group_id	int(11)	Yes			The interface group this refers to (if any).
subintf_id	int(11)	Yes			The sub-interface this refers to (if any)
<pre>lwg_profile_id</pre>	varchar(20)	Yes			Local IPS Policy ID.
ipsSimulationVal	int(11)	No		0	Whether the Simulation Blocking feature is enabled for the VIDS.

The following table describes IV_Policy information.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default	Description / Comments
policy_id	varchar(20)	NO	Primary		Unique ID of the policy.
policy_name	varchar(255)	YES	Unique		Name of the policy.
outbound_id	varchar(20)	YES			Outbound policy ID for the policy.
isOutboundPolicy	varchar(10)	YES			Whether it is an outbound policy or not.
owner_id	varchar(20)	NO			Corresponding admin domain ID.
env_ref_fks	text	YES			iv_env_pref foreign key.
ui_filter_fks	text	YES			iv_ui_filter foreign key.
isVisibleToChild	varchar(10)	YES			Whether this policy can be inherited by a child admin domain.
Digest	varchar(100)	YES			Digest value.
isEditable	varchar(10)	YES			Whether this policy is editable.
last_Modified	timestamp	NO			Time stamp when this policy was last modified.
is_mom_defined	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	Whether this policy is inherited from the Central Manager.
lwg_flag ENUM('Y','N') NOT NULL default 'N',	enum('Y','N')			N	Whether this policy is local.
policy_desc	varchar(150)				User-defined description for the policy.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default	Description / Comments
version_num	int(11)	YES		0	Manager-assigned policy version number.

The following table describes iv_attack information.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default	
id	varchar(20)	NO	Primary		Unique ID assigned by McAfee.
version	varchar(20)	NO	Primary		Attack version. CONSTRAINT ivattack_pk PRIMARY KEY (id, version)
name	varchar(255)	YES			Name fo the attack.
launchpoint	varchar(50)	YES			
visible	varchar(50)	YES			
specversion	varchar(20)	YES			
description	longtext	YES			Description of the attack.
xml	longblob	YES			Attack definition in the XML format.
isUserDefined	varchar(10)	YES			Whether this is a Custom Attack.
TS	timestamp	NO			Timestamp of when the record was last modified.
isActive	varchar(10)	YES			Whether the attack is active.
release_version	varchar(15)	NO			Attack release version.
digest	varchar(100)	YES			Digest value.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default	
isUDSDeleted	varchar(10)	NO		False	

The following table describes IV_Filtered_Attack_List information.

Field	Туре	Null	Key	Default	Description / Comments
owner_id	varchar(20)	YES	MUL		Corresponding policy ID. CONSTRAINT ifal_ownerid_fk FOREIGN KEY (owner_id) REFERENCES iv_policy (policy_id)
attack_id	varchar(20)	YES	MUL		Attack ID.
filter_id	varchar(20)	YES	MUL		CONSTRAINT iv_filteredattklist_fk FOREIGN KEY (owner_id, filter_id) REFERENCES iv_ui_filter (owner_id, filter_id)
isActive	varchar(10)	YES			Status of the attack in a policy.
last_modified	timestamp	NO			When the record was last modified.
attack_membership	varchar(20)	YES			
digest	varchar(100)	YES			Digest value.

The following table describes IV_impact information.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default	Description / Comments
severity	int(11)	YES			Attack severity.
category	varchar(20)	YES			Attack category.
xml	longtext	YES			Impact definition in XML format.

Field	Туре	Null	Key	Default	Description / Comments
attack_id_ref	varchar(20)	NO	MUL		CONSTRAINT ivimpact_fk FOREIGN KEY(attack_id_ref,attack_version) REFERENCES iv_attack(id, version)
attack_version	varchar(20)	YES	MUL		Attack version.
TS	timestamp	NO			Timestamp when this record was last modified.
isActive	varchar(10)	NO			Whether the record is active.
release_version	varchar(15)	NO			Signature set version.
digest	varchar(100)	YES			Digest value.

The following table describes iv_intf_group information.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default	Description / Comments
intf_group_id	int(11)	NO	Primary		Unique ID assigned by the Manager to a port cluster.
last_modified	timestamp	NO			The time when this record was last modified.
sensor_id	int(11)	NO	MUL		Unique ID of the Sensor. CONSTRAINT iig_sensorid_fk FOREIGN KEY(sensor_id)
name	varchar(255)	NO			User-defined name for the port cluster.
primary_intf_id	int(11)	NO	MUL		ID of the primary interface in the port cluster.

The following table describes IV_Subscriber information.

Field	Туре	Null	Key	Default	Description / Comments
SUBSCRIBER_ID	int (11)	NO	PRI	١N	The primary key of the admin domain.
LAST_MODIFIED	timestamp	NO		CURRENT _TIMESTAMP	When this record was last modified.
LAST_RESOURCECHILDCHANGED	timestamp	NO		0000-00-00 00:00:00	
LAST_RESOURCETREECHANGED	timestamp	NO		0000-00-00 00:00:00	
LAST_SUBCHILDCHANGED	timestamp	NO		0000-00-00 00:00:00	
LAST_SUBTREECHANGED	timestamp	NO		0000-00-00 00:00:00	
NAME	varchar(255)	NO		١N	User-defined name of the admin domain.
DESCRIPTION	varchar(255)	NO		١N	User-specified description for the admin domain.
COMPANY	varchar(255)	YES		١N	The name of the company or owner of this admin domain.
PRIMARY_CONTACT_ID	int(11)	YES	MUL	١N	Reference to the primary contact for this subscriber. CONSTRAINT is_primarycontactid_fk FOREIGN KEY(primary_contact_id) REFERENCES iv_contact(contact_id),

10| Integration of the Manager with SIEM products

Field	Туре	Null	Key	Default	Description / Comments
SECONDARY_CONTACT_ID	int(11)	YES	MUL	١N	Secondary contact (unused for now) CONSTRAINT is_secondarycontactid_fk FOREIGN KEY(secondary_contact_id) REFERENCES iv_contact(contact_id)
RESP_EMAIL_ADDR	varchar(255)	YES		١N	Default email address for Manager responses
RESP_PAGER_EMAIL_ADDR	varchar(255)	YES		١N	Default text-pager email address for Manager responses
RESP_SCRIPT_PATH	varchar(255)	YES		١N	Default script to be executed for script responses
SUBSCRIBER_LEVEL	tinyint(4)	NO		١N	The level in the admin-domain tree that this admin domain is defined at.
PARENT_ID	int(11)	YES	MUL	١N	ID of the parent admin domain. It is 0 if the parent admin domain is My Company.
GROUP_TYPE	tinyint(4)	NO		0	0 if this is a leaf subscriber, 1 if it is not.
MAXUSERS	int(11)	NO		0	The maximum number of users that can be defined under this admin domain.
MAXSUBSCRIBERS	int(11)	NO		0	The maximum number of child admin domains that can be

Field	Туре	Null	Key	Default	Description / Comments
					defined under this admin domain.
MAXALERTS	int(11)	NO		10000	
HAS_ANOMALY	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	Whether this admin domain has anomaly detection turned on by default for all its VIDS.
ALLOW_CHILD_SUBSCRIBERS	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	Whether this admin domain can create additional child admin domains under itself.
ALLOW_DELEGATION	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	Whether child admin domains of this admin domain can set their own policies.
ALLOW_VIDS	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	Whether this admin domain can create additional VIDS as subsets of its overall VIDS.
ALLOW_NONSTD_PORTS	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	Whether this admin domain can specify nonstandard ports to be considered equivalent to standard protocol ports, for example, like alternate HTTPserver ports.
ALLOW_PHYSICAL_RESOURCES	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	Whether this admin domain can have Sensors and the network links owned by them.
IS_OVERRIDERULESET_ENABLE	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	
ALLOW_SENSORLVL_HST_ISOLATION	enum('Y','N')	NO		Y	Whether this admin domain is allowed to config Sensor level host quarantine.

Field	Туре	Null	Key	Default	Description / Comments
IDS_PROFILE_ID	varchar(20)	YES	MUL	١N	The default signature profile ID for this admin domain. CONSTRAINT is_idsprofileid_fk FOREIGN KEY(ids_profile_id) REFERENCES iv_policy(policy_id)
RECON_POLICY_ID	int(11)	YES		0	ID of the Sensor recon policy.
EMAIL_ENABLED	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	A flag to enable email responses.
EMAIL_THRESHOLD	tinyint(4)	YES		١N	An alert severity threshold beyond which the Manager must send email notification of alerts. If null, then the Manager must never send email notifications of alerts.
EMAIL_SUPP_INTERVAL	int(11)	YES		600	Once the Manager has emailed a notification, it should not send any more email notification for this interval (seconds).
PAGER_ENABLED	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	A flag to enable pager responses.
PAGER_THRESHOLD	tinyint(4)	YES		\N	An alert severity threshold beyond which the Manager must send pager notification of alerts. If null, then the Manager must never send pager notifications of alerts.
PAGER_SUPP_INTERVAL	int(11)	YES		600	Once the Manager has paged a notification, it should not

Field	Туре	Null	Key	Default	Description / Comments
					send any more pages for this interval (seconds).
SCRIPT_ENABLED	enum('Y','N')	NO		N	A flag to enable Script responses.
SCRIPT_THRESHOLD	tinyint(4)	YES		١N	An alert severity threshold beyond which the Manager must execute the corresponding scripts. If null, then the Manager must never execute scripts.
SCRIPT_SUPP_INTERVAL	int(11)	YES		600	Once the Manager has executed the scripts, it should not execute any more scripts for this interval (seconds).
BYATTACK_EMAIL	tinyint(4)	YES		١N	Per attack forwarder based on global policy settings.
BYATTACK_PAGER	tinyint(4)	YES		١N	Per attack forwarder based on global policy settings.
BYATTACK_SCRIPT	tinyint(4)	YES		١N	Per attack forwarder based on global policy settings.
BYAV_EMAIL	tinyint(4)	YES		١N	
BYAV_PAGER	tinyint(4)	YES		١N	
BYAV_SCRIPT	tinyint(4)	YES		١N	
IS_MPE_POLICY_ENABLE	enum('Y','N')	NO		Y	
EMAIL_FILTERID	int(11)	YES			Email alert filter ID associated with this admin domain.

Field	Туре	Null	Key	Default	Description / Comments
PAGER_FILTERID	int(11)	YES			Pager alert filter ID associated with this admin domain.
SCRIPT_FILTERID	int(11)	YES			Script alert filter ID associated with this admin domain.
ANAMOLY_POLICY_ID	int(11)	YES			ID of the NTBA anamoly policy.
WORM_POLICY_ID	int(11)	YES			ID of the NTBA worm policy.

The following table describes IV_Audit information.

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default	Description / Comments
TS	timestamp	NO	MUL		The time when the audit message was audited.
USERID	varchar(64)	YES			The user ID of the user whose action is audited.
ACTION	varchar(255)	YES			The action being audited.
TARGET	text	YES			The resource on which the action is performed.
SUBSCRIBERID1	int(11)	YES			Subscriber1, subscriber2, and so on are the list of nested admin domains, with the last non-null id being the admin domain to whom this audit message, and the earlier ones being its parents going back to the root admin domain ID. Audit messages of the root subscriber will have all these columns as NULL.
SUBSCRIBERID2	int(11)	YES			
SUBSCRIBERID3	int(11)	YES			
SUBSCRIBERID4	int(11)	YES			

Field	Туре	Null	Кеу	Default	Description / Comments
RESULT	int(11)	YES			The result of the operation (0 == success).
MESSAGE	text	YES			Additional explanatory text (especially for failures).
ACTIONTYPE	smallint(6)	YES			The action type column "ld" in table.
STARTTS	timestamp	YES			
AUDIT_DETAIL_ID	int(11)	YES	Unique		CONSTRAINT iv_auditdetailid_uq UNIQUE (audit_detail_id)

IV_ALERT_DATA decoding

The alert specific data is stored as a blob in the field called typeSpecificData in the iv_alert_data table. Following sections describe the format of the data stored in the blob.

IPS alerts

Port scan alert

All alerts that has iv_alert.alertType = 4 are port scan alerts. Its iv_alert_data.typeSpecific data has the following format:

First byte contains number of port information to follow. If there are five ports involved in port scan then first byte of typeSpecificData will contain value 5. Each subsequent 2 bytes will contain the actual port number values.

Total length of typeSpecificData will be 1 + (5*2) = 11 bytes.

The source and destination VLAN ID follow with each being 4 bytes. These fields are applicable only for NTBA alerts.

Number of bytes	Value
1	Version information

Number of bytes	Value
4 (IPv4) or 16 (Ipv6)	IP address
1	Total number of ports
2	Port information
Variable length	Packet logs

Port scan



Host sweep alert

All alerts that have iv_alert.alertType = 5 are hostsweep alerts. Its iv_alert_data.typeSpecific data has following format:

First byte contains number of IP information to follow. If there are ten IPs involved in the hostsweep, then first byte of typeSpecificData will contain value 10. Each subsequent four bytes will contain the actual IP values.

Total length of typeSpecificData in above example will be 1 + (10*4) = 41 bytes.

The source and destination VLAN ID follow with each being 4 bytes. These fields are applicable only for NTBA alerts.

Number of bytes	Value
4	Connection rule ID
4	Connection drop count

Number of bytes	Value
1	External geographical location
1	External reputation
1	Connection rule type
4	Protocol ID
2	IP address count
4 (IPv4) or 16 (IPv6)	Version of the target IP address
1	Version information
4 (IPv4) or 16 (IPv6)	Proxy IP address
Variable length	Packet logs

Host sweep alert

connection Rule Id	connectionDropCount	extGeoLocation	extReputation	connection Rule Type	ivProtocolld	IP Count	targetIPVesrion	Version	proxyIP	Packet Log
		Î						Î	Î	Î
4 bytes	4 byte	1 byte	1 byte	1 byte	4 bytes	2 bytes	IPv4 (4 bytes) IPv6 (16 bytes)	1 byte	IPv4 (4 ^l bytes) IPv6 (16 bytes)	Variable Length

Statistical anomaly alert

All alerts that have iv_alert.alertType = 2 are statistical anomaly alerts. The Statistical Anomaly Alert blob data contains two data blocks as shown in the following figure.

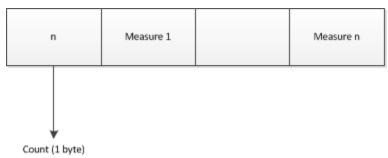
Statistical anomaly type specific data

Anomaly Measure Data DoS Pa	acket Type Data Block
-----------------------------	-----------------------

Anomaly measure data block

The anomaly measure data block contains a set of measures. The first byte in the block represents a count which tells how many measures are in the data block. The measures are followed by the count byte as shown in the following figure.

Anomaly measure data block



Each measure contains two sets of floating point (4 bytes) values. The first set represents the bins and the second set represents the bin-count data values.

The first byte in the measure contains the measure id, the second byte contains a count that tells how many four byte values are in each set, and rest of the bytes contain floating point values as shown in the following figure.

Measure



DoS packet type data block

The DoS packet type data block contains a set of Packet Type data. The first byte in the block contains a count that tells how many packet type data are in the block.

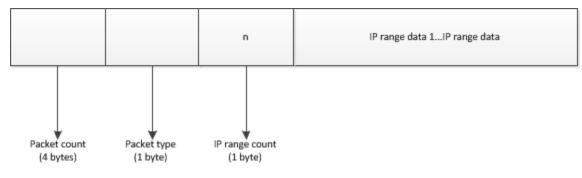
Packet type data block



Packet type data

Each packet type data contains a set of IP Range data. The first four bytes in the packet type data represent the packet count, the next one byte represents the packet type, the next one byte represents a count that tells how many IP range data are in the packet type data and the rest of the bytes represent the IP range data as shown in the figure below.

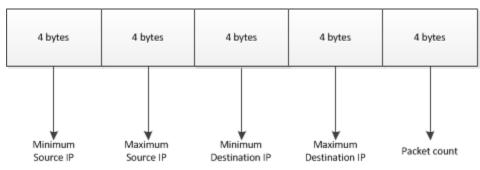
Packet type data



IP range data

The IP Range Data contains 20 bytes information as shown in the following figure.

IP range



- First four bytes Minimum source IP address
- Second four bytes Maximum source IP address
- Third four bytes Minimum destination IP address
- Fourth four bytes Maximum destination IP address
- Fifth four bytes Packet count

Threshold anomaly alert

iv_alert.alertType = 3 are threshold anomaly alerts. It only contains DoS Packet Type Data Block.

NTBA alerts

Port scan alert

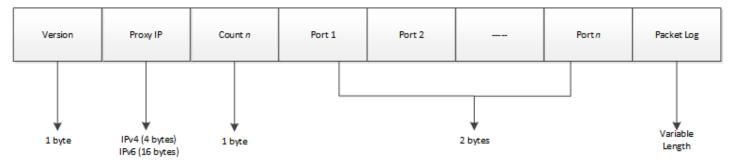
All alerts that have iv_alert.alertType = 20 are NTBA port scan alerts. Its iv_alert_data.typeSpecific data has following the format:

First byte contains the number of port information to follow. If there are five ports involved in the port scan, then the first byte of typeSpecific data will have a value of 5. Each subsequent pair of bytes will contain the actual port number values. Total length of typeSpecificData will be 1 + (5*2) + 8 = 19 bytes.

The details of the alert are as follows:

Number of bytes	Value
1	Version information
4 (IPv4) or 16 (Ipv6)	Proxy IP address
1	Total number of ports
2	Port details
Variable length	Packet logs

NTBA port scan



Host sweep alert

All alerts that have iv_alert.alertType = 21 are NTBA host sweep alerts. Its iv_alert_data.typeSpecific data has the following format:

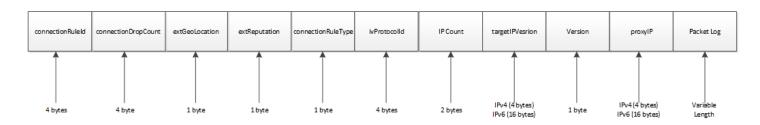
First byte contains number of the IP information to follow. If there are ten IPs involved in the hostsweep, then the first byte of typeSpecificData will have a value of 10. Every subsequent four bytes will contain the actual IP values.

Total length of typeSpecificData in the above example will be 1 + (10*4) + 8 = 49 bytes.

The details of the alert are as follows:

Number of bytes	Value
4	Connection rule ID
4	Connection drop count
1	External geographical location
1	External reputation
1	Connection rule type
4	Protocol ID
2	IP address count
4 (IPv4) or 16 (IPv6)	Version of the target IP address
1	Version information
4 (IPv4) or 16 (IPv6)	Proxy IP address
Variable length	Packet log

NTBA host sweep alert



Statistical anomaly alert

All alerts that have iv_alert.alertType = 14, are NTBA statistical anomaly alerts.

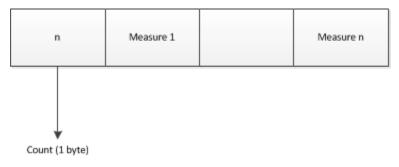
NTBA statistical anomaly type specific data

Anomaly Measure Data	Misc Data Block

Anomaly measure data block

The anomaly measure data block contains a set of measures. The first byte in the block represents a count which shows how many measures are present in the data block. The measures are followed by the count byte.

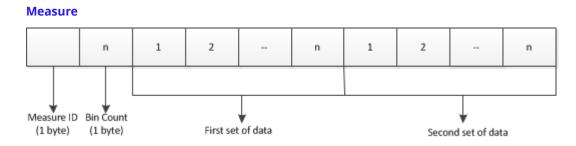
Anomaly measure data block



Measure

Each measure contains two sets of floating point (4 bytes) values. The first set represents the bins and the second set represents the bin-count data values.

The first byte in the measure contains the measure ID, the second byte contains a count that shows how many four-byte values are present in each set, and the rest of the bytes contain floating point values.



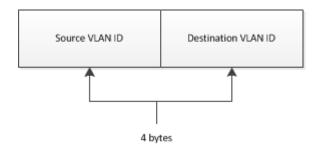
Miscellaneous data block

Service Block	VLAN Block
---------------	------------

Service block



VLAN block



Simple threshold alert

All alerts that have iv_alert.alertType = 15, are NTBA simple threshold alerts.

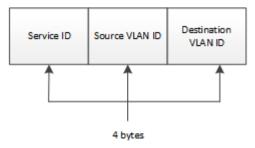
🗹 Note

Either the serviceld or applicationId will be -1 in an alert depending upon the type of the attack.

Number of bytes	Value
4	Service ID
4	Source VLAN ID

Number of bytes	Value
4	Destination VLAN ID

NTBA simple threshold type specific data

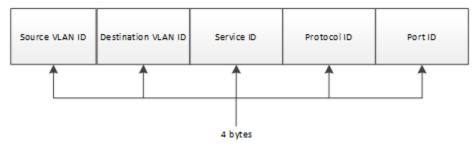


Generic behavioral alert

All alerts that have iv_alert.alertType = 201 are NTBA Generic Behavioral Alerts.

Number of bytes	Value
4	Destination VLAN ID
4	Source VLAN ID
4	Service ID
4	Protocol ID
4	Port ID

NTBA generic behavioral type specific data



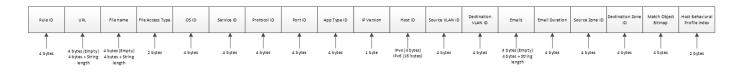
Policy violation alert

All alerts that have iv_alert.alertType = 200 are NTBA policy violation alerts.

Number of bytes	Value
4	Rule ID
4 (Empty/String Length)	Uniform Resource Locator (URL)
4 (Empty/String Length)	File name
2	Type of access for the file
4	Operating System ID
4	Service ID
4	Protocol ID
4	Port ID
4	Application type ID
1	IP address version
4 (IPv4) or 16 (IPv6)	Host ID

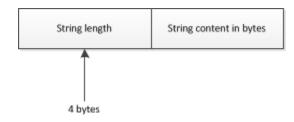
Number of bytes	Value
4	Source VLAN ID
4	Destination VLAN ID
4 (Empty/String Length)	Email address
4	Email duration
4	Source zone ID
4	Destination zone ID
4	Match bitmap object
2	Behavioral index of the host

NTBA policy violation type specific data



String

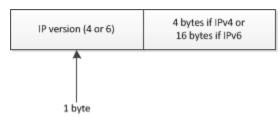
URL and file name are strings which are represented as shown below.



IP address

Host IP address is represented as shown below.

Host IP address

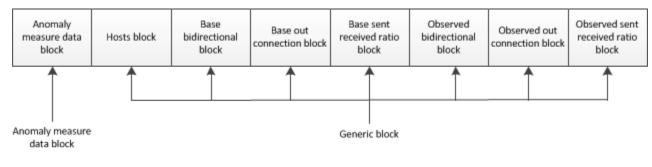


Worm alert

All alerts that have iv_alert.alertType = 13 are NTBA worm alerts.

The worm alert has anomaly measure data block, hosts block, and 3 sets of data blocks with base and observed values showing the deviation. The hosts block contains a list of host IDs which were involved in the worm attack. The observed and base data blocks are for bi-directional out connection and sent received ratios.

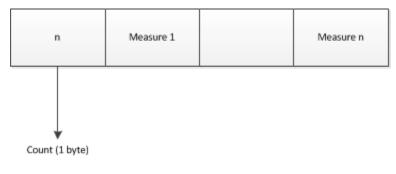
Worm alert type specific data



Anomaly measure data block

The anomaly measure data block contains a set of measures. The first byte in the block represents a count which shows how many measures are present in the data block. The measures are followed by the count byte.

Anomaly measure data block

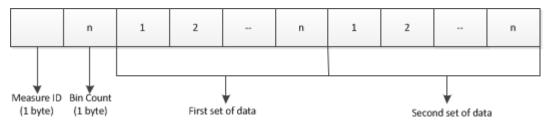


Measure

Each measure contains two sets of floating point (4 bytes) values. The first set represents the bins and the second set represents the bin-count data values.

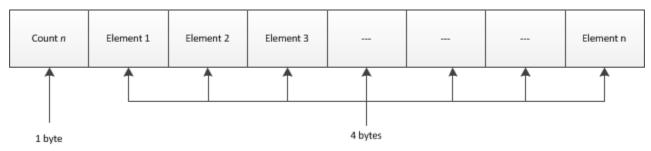
The first byte in the measure contains the measure ID, the second byte contains a count that shows how many four-byte values are present in each set, and the rest of the bytes contain floating point values.

Measure



Generic block

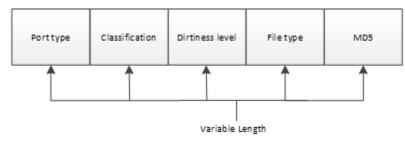
Generic block



File Reputation alert

All alerts that have iv_alert.alertType = 7 are File Reputation alerts. The iv_alert_data.typeSpecific data has the following format.

File reputation alert



🗹 Note

The port-type mapping bit is not currently used but allocated for future use.

The details of the alert are as follows:

Number of bytes	Value
Variable	Port type
Variable	Malware classification
Variable	The level of malicious content in the file
Variable	File type
Variable	MD5 hash value of the file

The following table describes file type mapping.

Value	File type
1	exe
2	dll
3	cpl
4	осх
5	sys
6	scr
7	drv
8	com

Value	File type
9	doc
10	docx
11	ppt
12	pptx
13	xls
14	xlsx
15	pdf

The following table describes dirtiness level mapping.

Value	Dirtiness level
0	Not applicable
2	Hash denotes a heuristic score less than 10
4	Hash denotes a heuristic score between 10 and 39
8	Hash denotes a heuristic score between 40 and 74
16	Hash denotes a heuristic score between 75 and 100
32	Hash denotes a heuristic score above 100
64	Hash is assumed clean

The following table describes classification mapping.

Value	Classification
0	No classification
2	Application
4	Virus
8	Trojan
16	Application

Information on database queries

If you plan to use database queries, note that iv_alert table receives a lot of new records if incoming rate of alert is high. Any query using a join with this table can bring down the performance of database significantly.

SQL query guidelines

For applications that use SQL queries to access data, the database query guidelines discussed in this section must be followed to minimize the impact on the Manager's performance. Frequent, large queries can negatively impact the performance of the Manager.

🗹 Note

Copy the Manager database on a different system before you run your queries.

The following are the guidelines that you must follow:

- Avoid joins joined queries lock the entire table for longer periods of time.
- Include the index-key as the first condition, wherever possible. Some examples of index keys are uuid and creation time.
- Allow time between queries to accommodate database updates. Some users leave at least a few minutes between queries.
- Query the small increments of data possible. The maximum number should be 3000 (use a limit class).

Implications of database queries

Scenario 1 — Query error

If an application queries the database at some point during the tuning exercise there is a remote chance that during the transition to (or from) the temporary tables, the SQL query will result in an error. If an SQL query error occurs, simply retry the query.

Scenario 2 — Query occurs while tuning is underway

If an SQL query is run during the tuning exercise the response and behavior would look the exact same as it would today. However, given the query has been made to the valid iv_alert and iv_packetlog tables that have just been created, there is now the likelihood that some records will be missed as in the case below:

- 1. The SIEM product has forwarded alerts up to uuid x.
- 2. Additional n alerts, x+1 to x+n are received prior to database tuning and before the application had a chance to forward them.
- 3. The SIEM product starts accepting alerts from the newer temporary alert table and forwards x+n+1 and so on.
- 4. When the merge occurs, the SIEM product is not aware of x+1 through x+n and they would never be forwarded.

To determine if the iv_alert and iv_packetlog tables are freshly created tables needed to enable online database tuning, you should include an additional query for table size with the standard query. If the table size is less than 100 records it can be concluded that a tuning exercise is underway and you must apply further logic to future queries to ensure no records are missed. Note that records forwarded during these queries are perfectly valid.

It is recommended that, upon determining that a query has just been made during tuning, the first query after determining a full-sized database (that is, tables have merged again) include records unid x-200 to x+(whatever increment is typically used). This query will include records that have already been forwarded, however it will also include any records that may have been missed during the tuning process. Duplicate records should be discarded.

Example queries

Following query can provide Sensor, interface, policy name, attack name for selected set of alerts.

```
select
        alrt.uuid,
        atk.name.
        sen.name,
        vids.name.
        pol.policy_name
from
        alert sample alrt,
        iv_sensor sen,
        iv vids vids,
        iv_policy pol,
        iv attack atk
where
        alrt.sensorid = sen.sensor id and
        alrt.policyid = pol.policy_id and
        concat("0x", hex(alrt.attackid), "00") = atk.id and
        alrt.vidsid = vids.vids id;
```

Attacks included in policy

```
select
    pol.policy_name,
    list.attack_id,
    atk.name
from
    iv_policy pol,
    iv_filtered_attack_list_list,
    iv_attack_atk
where
    pol.policy_id = list.owner_id_and
    atk.id = list.attack_id;
```

Finding list of policies that is including given attack id

```
select
    pol.policy_name,
    list.attack_id,
    atk.name
from
    iv_policy_pol,
    iv_filtered_attack_list_list ,
    iv_attack_atk
where
    pol.policy_id = list.owner_id_and
    atk.id = list.attack_id_and
    list.attack_id = "0x4la0le00";
```

Fetching only NTBA alerts

Just add the following clause to any query involving iv_alert table: AND deviceType = 1

Alert synchronization in an MDR deployment

Sensors generate events with an ID unique to them. Sensors forward the events to both Managers in an MDR deployment to provide high availability and no loss of events. These events can come in any order from multiple Sensors connected to the individual Managers and hence the association of UUID assigned at the Manager level to the individual events are potentially different between Managers. So, you cannot rely on UUID as a unique identifier to associate with events across Managers in an MDR configuration.

Since the Sensors send the events to both the Managers, events are duplicated across the Managers. When a Manager is temporarily down, and comes back up, the events that were not received during the downtime are not re-sent by the Sensors. There is an MDR mechanism to synchronize the missing events with the peer Manager. This synchronizes the missing events from the last 24 hours to a maximum of 10,000 events between the Managers. So, the only ID that is unique across both managers is the one generated by the Sensor itself. The Sensor-generated IDs are in monotonically increasing order. This imposes effort on the part of the SIEM products to de-duplicate events between Managers.

There is a new column added in iv_alert table for Sensor-generated ids. It is called, SensorAlertUUID.

The current suggestions are:

- Access the database using the UUID to look for newer events.
- Look for events on a per Sensor basis with the SensorAlertUUID.
- For the most part, it is sufficient to consume events from one of the Manager's database tables.

- If there is a jump in sensorAlertUUID for a Sensor, then do one of the following:
 - Peer Manager can provide the missing events based on sensorAlertUUID.
 - Wait for the automatic event synchronization that occurs between the peer Managers for the missing data.
 - In case the peer Manager cannot come up with the misssing SensorAlertUUID, it is likely the case that due to a restart of the Sensor, the Sensor will skip on the current sequence of SensorAlertUUID and start from a new base which is monotonically higher than the previous event received.

• If there are no new events in the current Manager's database table, then the Manager may be down. Check the peer Manager for new events. If any, switch to the peer Manager's table and continue reading the table.

- The UUID is still valid for accessing the variable data part stored in iv_alerts_data table for events from iv_alert table.
- NTBA alerts are not synched to the peer Manager; they only exist in the Manager that has been configured in the NTBA device.

There are new columns added for operating system and user information. These columns will have values only for certain events.

- · sourceUserId user ID in the host that belongs to the sourceIpaddr
- destinationUserId user ID in the host that belongs to the targetIpAddr
- sourceOSId Operating system ID in the host that belongs to the sourceIpaddr
- destinationOSId Operating system ID in the host that belongs to the targetIpAddr

Create PCAP format packet logs

Packet logs are stored in a raw format in the Manager database. This section provides information on how to convert the packet log data into PCAP format.

There are two types of packet logs stored in the table. One is regular packets and other one is fragment packets. Packet logs are applicable only to signature alerts (that is, alert of alertType = 1). For a given UUID, we may have both regular and fragment packet logs. So, the PCAP will have a file header and one or more packet headers for both regular and fragment packet logs.

🗹 Note

The Manager does provide packet logs in the order of creationTime. So creationTime is not unique, and the microseconds in appended based on the packet log sequence numbers in the PCAP.

The high-level steps involved in creating PCAP for packet logs based on a UUID are provided below.

Task

- 1. Retrieve an alert data for the given UUID, from the iv_alert.
 - a. Use an SQL query to retrieve the alert data. For example, if UUID is 12890, Select * from iv_alert where UUID = 12890.
- 2. Retrieve both regular and fragment packet logs data using the SensorId and the packetLog id in the alert data, from the iv_packetlog.

- a. Use an SQL query to retrieve all regular packets with the Sensorld and the packetLogId. Example: For Sensorid = 101 and packetlog id = 2002, the following is the query to get the regular packets from the iv_packetlog: select * from iv_packetlog WHERE SensorId = 101 AND packetLogId = 2002 AND packetLogType = `P' ORDER BY SensorId, packetLogId, packetLogType, packetLogSeq, lastReqByteStreamOffset, lastRespByteStreamOffset";
- b. Use an SQL query to retrieve all fragment packets: Select * from iv_packetlog WHERE SensorId = 101 AND packetLogId = 2002 AND packetLogType = 'F' ORDER BY SensorId, packetLogId, packetLogType, packetLogSeq, lastRegByteStreamOffset, lastRespByteStreamOffset";
- 3. Create the pcap file header and write them into a file. The PCAP file header format is as follows:
- 4. Create the pcap packet headers for all regular packets and write them into the file.
- 5. Create the pcap packet headers for all fragment packets and write them into the file.
- 6. Use the file with Ethereal.

More information regarding steps 3, 4, and 5 are provided in the subsequent sections.

Create the PCAP file header and write them into a file

The following table describes PCAP file header format.

Bytes	Value	Comment
4	0xA1B2C3D4	Magic number
2	2	Major number
2	4	Minor number
4	gmtOff/1000	Time zone correction
4	0	sigfigs
4	65536	samplen
4	1	linktype

Creating the PCAP packet headers for all regular packets and write them into the file

A packet header must be created for every packet.

Also capture the source and target ip addresses defined in the first 12 bytes of the regular packet log data. You can use the first one because all packet logs data will have the same information. You may have to use these addresses in fragment PCAP packet headers. First 6 bytes are source and next 6 bytes are target.

Packet header for regular packets

The following table describes packet header for regular packets.

Bytes	Value	Comment
4	creationTime	It is the 'creationTime' from the table
4	TimeStamp	Microseconds
4	len	Packet log data length (blob length)
4	len	Packet log data length (blob length)
n	packets	Actual packet log data

Create the PCAP packet headers for all fragment packets and write them into the file.

You must create a packet header for every fragment packet. The following table describes the packet header for fragmented packets.

Bytes	Value	Comment
4	creationTime	It is the "creationTime" from the table.
4	TimeStamp	Microseconds.
4	len + 14	Packet log data length (blob length) + 14
4	len + 14	Packet log data length (blob length) + 14

Bytes	Value	Comment
6	sourceAddr	0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF
6	targetAddr	0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF
2	0xFFFF	IP type
n	Packets	Actual packet log data.

Enable communication between Syslog server and the Manager

To enable communication between the Syslog server and the Manager, perform the following tasks:

- Create a user account in the Manager
- Configure Syslog events in the Manager

Create a user account in the Manager

The Syslog server communicates with the Manager using a user account available in the Manager. You should create a user account in the Manager. To create a user in the Manager, login to the Manager MariaDB and create a user. This user can connect remotely to the Manager from the specified Syslog server. You should grant **SELECT** permissions to the user on the database.

Run the following commands on the MariaDB command prompt:

• GRANT SELECT ON lf.* TO 'user_name'@'receiver_ip_address' IDENTIFIED BY 'user_name_password' WITH GRANT OPTION;

This command creates the user and sets the required privileges. In the command, <u>user_name</u> is the desired username, <u>user_name_password</u> is the password for the newly created user, and <u>receiver_ip_address</u> is the IP address of the Syslog server that will connect to the Manager.

• FLUSH PRIVILEGES;

This command applies the privilege changes without restarting MariaDB.

Configure Syslog events in the Manager

For information on configuring Syslog events in the Manager, see the McAfee Network Security Platform IPS Administration Guide.

Create a database user in a MLOS system

To create a database user for accessing the Manager database on a MLOS system, perform the following steps:

Task

- 1. Login to the Manager instance.
- 2. Switch to the restricted shell.

To switch to the restricted shell, use the <u>5n3ak1n</u> command. After running the command, it will prompt for the root password followed by the admin password.

- 3. Enable listening on port 3306.
 - If you are using Manager version 9.1.x or 9.2.x, run the following command:

#iptables -A INPUT -p tcp --dport 3306 -j ACCEPT

• If you are using Manager version 10.1.x, run the following commands:

#firewall-cmd --zone=public --permanent --add-port=3306/tcp

#firewall-cmd --reload

4. Comment the bind-address and the skip-networking properties in the /etc/my.cnf file.

```
For example:
```

```
#bind-address=127.0.0.1
#skip-networking
```

5. Restart the mysql service.

#systemctl restart mysqld

6. Login to MariaDB as a root user.

#<Manager installation path>/MariaDB/bin/mysql -uroot -p

Running this command will prompt you to enter the root password of the database. On successful login, you will get the MariaDB prompt and in the prompt, run the use mysql; command.

7. Create the required database user.

>create user <new user name of the database>@<IP address of the system from which the user will connect to the database> identified by '<password>';

For example:

>create user nsmtst@192.168.1.20 identified by 'nsmtp';

8. Provide read only access to the newly created database user.
>grant select on lf.* to nsmtst@192.168.1.20;

What to do next

To verify if the database user creation was successful, from a Windows client, run the following command:

C:\MariaDB\bin\mysql -u nsmtst -h <IP address of the Manager instance> -P 3306 -p

For example:

```
C:\MariaDB\bin\mysql -u nsmtst -h 192.168.1.30 -P 3306 -p
```

You will be prompted for password. On successful authentication, you can access the database server running on the Manager instance.

Sensor data available for MIB browsers

You can view the values of the Sensor's MIB (Management Information Base) objects. For this purpose, you can integrate SNMP tools such as MIB browsers with the Sensor. The Sensor supports this integration only through SNMPv3.

Integrate an SNMP MIB browser with a Sensor

You can integrate third-party SNMP MIB browsers to a Sensor. Then using the MIB browser, you can directly read data from a Sensor for analysis or just monitoring Sensor performance.

The following are the high-level steps involved in integrating an SNMP MIB browser with a Sensor:

Task

- Because the Sensor uses only SNMPv3 to communicate with a third-party SNMP MIB browser, you need to set up the SNMPv3 user accounts in the Manager. Then the Manager automatically pushes these details to the Sensor so that the Sensor can authenticate the requests from a MIB browser. You can set up these details per Sensor or configure it at an admin domain level and inherit it at the Sensor level. See the *McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide* for the steps.
- 2. For security reasons, you must configure the IP address of the MIB browser that will query the Sensor. You can configure this per Sensor or configure it at the admin domain and inherit it at the Sensor level. See the *McAfee Network Security Platform Product Guide* for the steps.
- 3. Configure the SNMPv3 details on your MIB browser. Information is provided in the next section.
- 4. Load the Sensor MIBs on your MIB browser.

The Sensor uses proprietary MIB objects. These objects are contained in various files that are available in the Manager server. You can load these files on a MIB browser to view the MIB objects and to understand the hierarchy of the MIB structure in the Sensor. The steps are provided in the subsequent section.

Configure the SNMPv3 user details on the MIB browser

For your MIB browser to be able to query the Sensor successfully, it should use the SNMPv3 account details that you have configured on the Sensor. So, you must configure the corresponding SNMPv3 details in your MIB browser.

The details that you would generally need while configuring the SNMPv3 details in your MIB browser are as follows:

- The Management port IP address of the Sensor.
- Communication port for SNMPv3. You can specify only the standard port, which is 161. Make sure port 161 is open in the relevant firewalls of your network.
- The user name that you configured in the SNMPv3 Users page of the Manager.
- The security level, which is authPriv.
- The authentication algorithm, which is MD5.

• The authentication password. This is the **Authentication Password** that you configured in the SNMPv3 Users page of the Manager.

- The privacy algorithm, which is DES.
- The privacy password. This is the **Private Password** that you configured in the SNMPv3 Users page of the Manager.

Load the Sensor MIBs onto to your MIB browser

Before you begin

Make sure you have the Sensor MIB files available. In your Manager installed directory, go to McAfee\Network Security Manager \App\config\mibs and copy all of the contents.

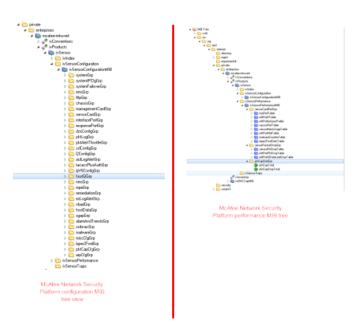
Task

- 1. Open your MIB browser.
- 2. Configure the third-party SNMPv3 users and other SNMP-related configurations, such as timeouts (preferred value is 30 seconds) and retries (preferred value is 3), in the MIB browser.
- 3. Load the following files in the same order:
 - a. MCAFEE-SMI
 - b. MCAFEE-TC
 - c. MCAFEE-SENSOR-SMI
 - d. MCAFEE-SENSOR-CONF-MIB
 - e. MCAFEE-SENSOR-PERF-MIB
 - f. MCAFEE-INTRUVERT-EMS-TRAP-MIB

After you load the MIB files, you can view the MIB tree structure in your MIB browser. Based on the features available in your MIB browser, you can use the data from the Sensor for analysis or just for monitoring. All the following snapshots are taken using MG-SOFT MIB Browser Professional SNMPv3 Edition.

The following snapshot provides the view of the configuration and performance MIB supported for McAfee Network Security Platform.

MIB configuration



The following snapshot provides the SNMP walk output of the system group under the McAfee Network Security Platform configuration MIB.

Edit View SNMP Act inio 2: 25 (27 🖬 🖬 🖬 🖬 🖓 😓 🗄 😌 🕾 🕾 🕾 🖉 🖬 en Mil Pina - 🔝 📴 SgH 7216210.2 663.6647.6282 02> 100 00 00 02 lived 2 Prompt For OID. W Multiple Yariable Binding H Multiple Dp Collapse 🕻 Get Nei GetBuik Info Ph Find Copy OID Taggle B 🖏 Proper

From release 6.1.5, restricted write access to a section of the MIB is available. Refer to Management of permitted NMS IP address , *Product Guide*.

SNMP walk output

The following snapshot provides information about the MIB subgroup, which has write access from third-party SNMP applications.

SNMP walk output

MG-SOFT MIB Browser Pro		Name of Street Street West, Str		
ie Edit View SNMP A		Belo (2) 42 13 15 15 15 44		
		ଅଷ ଓ ଅଧିକା		
My MII Ping				
Benote SNMP agent (72.16.233.25		Sgit		
	- 🛛 😫	Vertical		
gill tee				Query results
	> 🚞 pkil.oj			Welcome to MG-SDFT MIB Browser 2010 Professional SMMPv3 Ed
	> Co pHA4e > Co pHA4e > Co pHA4e			
	E2Coni 12Coni			
	> 👝 acLog			
	🖂 🗀 tacaci	PhotothGrp		
) 🖂 igM6D			
	# 🛄 hostQ			
		etQContigGap houtQFiberTimeOut		
		hostQD eleteAllFilters		
		erQBulkFilterTableV4		
	a 😑	hostQBulkFilterEntry//4		
		hostQBuikFiteIndeeWi hostQBuikFiteGroiPAddW4		
		hostQBulkFiteWidsIdV4		
		hostQEu8FitesAttackIdV4	n	
		hostQEu&FilteEndTimeV4		
		hot@Eu&Files@RStatusW4		
		hostGBuil/FiteIMPEReplyMsgV4		
		rtQBulkFitterTableV6 hostQBulkFitterEnts/V5		
		hostQEu&FilteIndeeW6		
		hostQBulkFilterSrd/PAddW6		
		hoetQBuikFilter/videl.dVS		
		hostQBuikFitesAttackIdVS hostQBuikFitesEndTimeVG		
		hodQEukFiteQRStatuW6		
		honGBullFilterMPERepIdMigN6	1	
		retQNeverDeryTableV4		
		ctQNeverDergTableV6		
		otQUserDelFilterTableV4 hostQUserDelFilterEntsV4		
	-	hostQUserDeFilerSicip/4		
		hostQUserDelFilterVidsldV4		
		hostQUserDefFilesAttackId/4		
		hot@UseDeFiledDutation/4 hot@UseDeFilesAction/4		
		hotGUteDer Heikotorive		
	a 🍋 te	and UserDeff WerTable//S		
	4 💼	hostQUsedDelFilterEnts/r6		
		hontQUoerDetFilterSnolph/6		
		hosQUserDeFilter/idsid/S hosQUserDeFilterAttackid/S		
		hostQUseDeFileDustion/S		
		houtQUseDelFilesAction//6		
	> 🐑 meGr			
	li 🧰 npeGr			
	In the second			

The following snapshot provides the SNMP set output for quarantining the host with IP 192.168.218.5 under the host quarantine group of McAfee Network Security Platform MIB.

SNMP set output

ile Edit View SNMP Action Tools Window Help	
え 11 の 火 pi 单 i 田 🏭 💫 🔤 🥫 🖓 🕸 🐨 🖉 🖉	
luny MB Ping	
Benote SYMP epent Split	
172.16.233.25 • 🔀 🔯 🖉 Vetical	
MB tee	Quey would
Constitution Production Production	Loudipublication of the state
hostQBukFibetEndTimeV6 hostQBukFibetQRStatueV6	Set - hostQUserDefFilterA add(1)
hostQBuB/BetMPETtepipMagVG hostQBueVeCenvTableV4	0 B C
b im hostaneven enyl abev + b im hostQNevenDenyTableVE	Resole SNMP agent
a 🧰 host@UseDerFiterTableV4	172.16.233.25 • 🔊 🔁
# 🧰 hostQUseDetFileEntyV4	OID to Set
hostQUeeDeFReSciph4 hostQUseDeFReVided/4	361.41.8962.21.21.22.61.5.192.168.218.5.0.0 -
hostspannerservices ov 4 hostSLise/DelFiles/state/disc/	
http://www.antionalianalianalianalianalianalianalianal	Value to Set
hostQUoerDetFiltenIcdoriV4	1 - 🖼 🖾
torolUseDaffeeRevedued/4 websetaine//4 websetaine//4 websetaine//4 websetaine//4 websetaine//4 websetaine//4 websetaine//4 websetaine//4 websetaine//4	Syntax Weger32 Triestoks Downer64 Univeger32 Triestoks Dosque Downer32 OD Nirapada Gauge32 Octob Site
hostQLowDefFitwoHtackId/IS hostQLowDeFFiteDuration/iFit	

COPYRIGHT

Copyright © 2022 Musarubra US LLC.

McAfee and the McAfee logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of McAfee, LLC or its subsidiaries in the US and other countries. Other marks and brands may be claimed as the property of others.

